

# DIGITAL VIDEO RECORDER

User's Manual

V1.1.0

#### Mandatory actions to be taken towards cybersecurity

#### 1. Change Passwords and Use Strong Passwords:

The number one reason systems get "hacked" is due to having weak or default passwords. It is recommended to change default passwords immediately and choose a strong password whenever possible. A strong password should be made up of at least 8 characters and a combination of special characters, numbers, and upper and lower case letters.

#### 2. Update Firmware

As is standard procedure in the tech-industry, we recommend keeping NVR, DVR, and IP camera firmware up-to-date to ensure the system is current with the latest security patches and fixes.

#### "Nice to have" recommendations to improve your network security

#### 1. Change Passwords Regularly

Regularly change the credentials to your devices to help ensure that only authorized users are able to access the system.

#### 2. Change Default HTTP and TCP Ports:

• Change default HTTP and TCP ports for systems. These are the two ports used to communicate and to view video feeds remotely.

• These ports can be changed to any set of numbers between 1025-65535. Avoiding the default ports reduces the risk of outsiders being able to guess which ports you are using.

#### 3. Enable HTTPS/SSL:

Set up an SSL Certificate to enable HTTPS. This will encrypt all communication between your devices and recorder.

#### 4. Enable IP Filter:

Enabling your IP filter will prevent everyone, except those with specified IP addresses, from accessing the system.

#### 5. Change ONVIF Password:

On older IP Camera firmware, the ONVIF password does not change when you change the system's credentials. You will need to either update the camera's firmware to the latest revision or manually change the ONVIF password.

#### 6. Forward Only Ports You Need:

• Only forward the HTTP and TCP ports that you need to use. Do not forward a huge range of numbers to the device. Do not DMZ the device's IP address.

• You do not need to forward any ports for individual cameras if they are all connected to a recorder on site; just the NVR is needed.

#### 7. Disable Auto-Login on SmartPSS:

Those using SmartPSS to view their system and on a computer that is used by multiple people should disable auto-login. This adds a layer of security to prevent users without the appropriate credentials from accessing the system.

#### 8. Use a Different Username and Password for SmartPSS:

In the event that your social media, bank, email, etc. account is compromised, you would not want someone collecting those passwords and trying them out on your video surveillance system. Using a different username and password for your security system will make it more difficult for someone to guess their way into your system.

#### 9. Limit Features of Guest Accounts:

If your system is set up for multiple users, ensure that each user only has rights to features and functions they need to use to perform their job.

#### 10. UPnP:

• UPnP will automatically try to forward ports in your router or modem. Normally this would be a good thing. However, if your system automatically forwards the ports and you leave the credentials defaulted, you may end up with unwanted visitors.

• If you manually forwarded the HTTP and TCP ports in your router/modem, this feature should be turned off regardless. Disabling UPnP is recommended when the function is not used in real applications.

#### 11. SNMP:

Disable SNMP if you are not using it. If you are using SNMP, you should do so only temporarily, for tracing and testing purposes only.

#### 12. Multicast:

Multicast is used to share video streams between two recorders. Currently there are no known issues involving Multicast, but if you are not using this feature, deactivation can enhance your network security.

#### 13. Check the Log:

If you suspect that someone has gained unauthorized access to your system, you can check the system log. The system log will show you which IP addresses were used to login to your system and what was accessed.

#### 14. Physically Lock Down the Device:

Ideally, you want to prevent any unauthorized physical access to your system. The best way to achieve this is to install the recorder in a lockbox, locking server rack, or in a room that is behind a lock and key.

## General

This user's manual (hereinafter referred to be "the Manual") introduces the functions and operations of the DVR devices (hereinafter referred to be "the Device").

## Models

Series	Models
	DH-XVR4104C-X/DH-XVR4108C-X/DH-XVR4116HS-X/DH-XVR4104HS-X/
XVR4 series	DH-XVR4108HS-X/DH-XVR4216AN-X/DH-XVR4232AN-X
	DH-XVR5108C-X/DH-XVR5104C-4KL-X/DH-XVR5104C-X/DH-XVR5108H-X/
	DH-XVR5116H-X/DH-XVR5104H-4KL-X/DH-XVR5108H-4KL-X/
	DH-XVR5116H-4KL-X/DH-XVR5108HE-X/DH-XVR5116HE-X/
	DH-XVR5108HS-X/DH-XVR5116HS-X/DH-XVR5104HS-4KL-X/
XVR5 series	DH-XVR5108HS-4KL-X/DH-XVR5104HS-X/DH-XVR5104H-X/
	DH-XVR5104HE-X/DH-XVR5216AN-X/DH-XVR5232AN-X/
	DH-XVR5208AN-4KL-X/DH-XVR5216AN-4KL-X/DH-XVR5216A-X/
	DH-XVR5432L-X/DH-XVR5832S-X/DH-5208AN-4KL-X-8/
	DH-5216AN-4KL-X-16P/DH-XVR5108H-4KL-X-8P
	DH-XVR7104E-4KL-X/DH-XVR7108E-4KL-X/DH-XVR7104E-4KL-B-X/
XVR7 series	DH-XVR7108E-4KL-B-X/DH-XVR7104HE-4KL-X/
	DH-XVR7108HE-4KL-X/DH-XVR7116HE-4KL-X/DH-XVR7108HE-4K-X/
	DH-XVR7208A-4KL-X/DH-XVR7216A-4KL-X/DH-XVR7208A-4K-X/
	DH-XVR7416L-4KL-X/ DH-XVR7816S-4KL-X

## Safety Instructions

The following categorized signal words with defined meaning might appear in the Manual.

Signal Words	Meaning
	Indicates a high potential hazard which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.
	Indicates a medium or low potential hazard which, if not avoided, could result in slight or moderate injury.
	Indicates a potential risk which, if not avoided, could result in property damage, data loss, lower performance, or unpredictable result.
©TIPS	Provides methods to help you solve a problem or save you time.

Signal Words	Meaning	
	Provides additional information as the emphasis and supplement	
	to the text.	

#### **Revision History**

No.	Version	Revision Content	Release Time
1	V1.0.0	First Release.	February 27, 2018
2	V1.0.1	Add eight models.	March 27, 2018
3	V1.1.0	<ol> <li>Add four models.</li> <li>Add following sections:         <ul> <li>Add following sections:</li> <li>Privacy Protection Notice</li> <li>Using Reset Button on the Mainboard</li> <li>Configuring White Light</li> <li>Configuring Siren</li> <li>Viewing PoC Information</li> </ul> </li> <li>Update following sections:         <ul> <li>About the Manual</li> <li>Important Safeguards and Warnings</li> <li>Configuring IVS Function</li> <li>Configuring Face Detection</li> </ul> </li> </ol>	May 10, 2018

### **Privacy Protection Notice**

As the device user or data controller, you might collect personal data of others' such as face, fingerprints, car plate number, Email address, phone number, GPS and so on. You need to be in compliance with the local privacy protection laws and regulations to protect the legitimate rights and interests of other people by implementing measures include but not limited to: providing clear and visible identification to inform data subject the existence of surveillance area and providing related contact.

### About the Manual

- The Manual is for reference only. If there is inconsistency between the Manual and the actual product, the actual product shall prevail.
- We are not liable for any loss caused by the operations that do not comply with the Manual.
- The Manual would be updated according to the latest laws and regulations of related regions. For detailed information, see the paper User's Manual, CD-ROM, QR code or our official website. If there is inconsistency between paper User's Manual and the electronic version, the electronic version shall prevail.
- All the designs and software are subject to change without prior written notice. The product updates might cause some differences between the actual product and the Manual. Please

contact the customer service for the latest program and supplementary documentation.

- There still might be deviation in technical data, functions and operations description, or errors in print. If there is any doubt or dispute, please refer to our final explanation.
- Upgrade the reader software or try other mainstream reader software if the Guide (in PDF format) cannot be opened.
- All trademarks, registered trademarks and the company names in the Manual are the properties of their respective owners.
- Please visit our website, contact the supplier or customer service if there is any problem occurred when using the device.
- If there is any uncertainty or controversy, please refer to our final explanation.

# Important Safeguards and Warnings

This Chapter describes the contents covering proper handling of the Device, hazard prevention, and prevention of property damage. Read these contents carefully before using the Device, comply with them when using, and keep it well for future reference.

#### **Operation Requirement**

- Do not place or install the Device in a place exposed to sunlight or near the heat source.
- Keep the Device away from dampness, dust or soot.
- Keep the Device installed horizontally on the stable place to prevent it from falling.
- Do not drop or splash liquid onto the Device, and make sure there is no object filled with liquid on the Device to prevent liquid from flowing into the Device.
- Install the Device in a well-ventilated place, and do not block the ventilation of the Device.
- Operate the device within the rated range of power input and output.
- Do not dissemble the Device.
- Transport, use and store the Device under the allowed humidity and temperature conditions.

#### **Electrical Safety**

- Improper battery use might result in fire, explosion, or inflammation.
- When replacing battery, make sure the same model is used.
- Use the recommended power cables in the region and conform to the rated power specification.
- Use the power adapter provided with the Device; otherwise, it might result in people injury and device damage.
- The power source shall conform to the requirement of the Safety Extra Low Voltage (SELV) standard, and supply power with rated voltage which conforms to Limited power Source requirement according to IEC60950-1. Please note that the power supply requirement is subject to the device label.
- Connect the device (I-type structure) to the power socket with protective earthing.
- The appliance coupler is a disconnection device. When using the coupler, keep the angle for easy operation.

Cybersecurity RecommendationsI
Foreword III
Important Safeguards and WarningsVI
1 Introduction1
1.1 Overview
1.2 Functions
2 Getting Started
2.1 Checking the Components
2.2 Installing HDD
2.2.1 DH-XVR5108C-X/DH-XVR5104C-4KL-X/DH-XVR5104C-X/
DH-XVR4104C-X/DH-XVR4108C-X
2.2.2 DH-XVR7104E-4KL-X/DH-XVR7108E-4KL-X/DH-XVR7104E-4KL-B-X/
DH-XVR7108E-4KL-B-X5
2.2.3 DH-XVR4116HS-X/DH-XVR5108HS-X/DH-XVR5116HS-X/DH-XVR5104HS-4KL-X/
DH-XVR5108HS-4KL-X/
DH-XVR5108H-X/DH-XVR5116H-X/DH-XVR5104H-4KL-X/DH-XVR5108H-4KL-X/DH-XVR511
6H-4KL-X/DH-XVR5108HE-X/DH-XVR5116HE-X/DH-XVR7104HE-4KL-X/DH-XVR7108HE-4K
L-X/DH-XVR7116HE-4KL-X/DH-XVR7108HE-4K-X/DH-XVR5104HS-X/
DH-XVR4104HS-X/DH-XVR5104H-X/DH-XVR5104HE-X/DH-XVR4108HS-X
2.2.4 DH-XVR4216AN-X/DH-XVR4232AN-X/DH-XVR5216AN-X/DH-XVR5232AN-X/
DH-XVR5208AN-4KL-X/DH-XVR5216AN-4KL-X/DH-XVR5216A-X/DH-XVR7208A-4KL-X/DH-
XVR7216A-4KL-X/DH-XVR7208A-4K-X7
2.2.5 DH-XVR7416L-4KL-X/DH-XVR5432L-X7
2.2.6 DH-XVR7816S-4KL-X/DH-XVR5832S-X8
2.3 Installing Device into Rack8
3 The Grand Tour10
<b>3.1</b> Front Panel
3.1.1 DH-XVR5108C-X/DH-XVR5104C-4KL-X/DH-XVR5104C-X/
DH-XVR4104C-X/DH-XVR4108C-X10
3.1.2 DH-XVR7104E-4KL-X/DH-XVR7108E-4KL-X/DH-XVR7104E-4KL-B-X/
DH-XVR7108E-4KL-B-X11
3.1.3 DH-XVR5108H-X/DH-XVR5116H-X/DH-XVR5104H-4KL-X/DH-XVR5108H-4KL-X/
DH-XVR5116H-4KL-X/DH-XVR5108HE-X/DH-XVR5116HE-X/DH-XVR4116HS-X/DH-XVR510
8HS-X/DH-XVR5116HS-X/DH-XVR5104HS-4KL-X/DH-XVR5108HS-4KL-X/
DH-XVR5104HS-X/DH-XVR4104HS-X/DH-XVR4108HS-X/DH-XVR5104H-X/
DH-XVR5104HE-X
3.1.4 DH-XVR7104HE-4KL-X/DH-XVR7108HE-4KL-X/DH-XVR7116HE-4KL-X/
DH-XVR7108HE-4K-X
3.1.5 DH-XVR4216AN-X/DH-XVR4232AN-X/DH-XVR5216AN-X/DH-XVR5232AN-X/
DH-XVR5208AN-4KL-X/DH-XVR5216AN-4KL-X/DH-XVR5216A-X
3.1.6 DH-XVR7208A-4KL-X/DH-XVR7216A-4KL-X/DH-XVR7208A-4K-X

3.1.7 DH-XVR7416L-4KL-X	14
3.1.8 DH-XVR7816S-4KL-X	14
3.1.9 DH-XVR5432L-X	14
3.1.10 DH-XVR5832S-X	15
3.2 Rear Panel	16
3.2.1 DH-XVR5108C-X/DH-XVR5104C-4KL-X/DH-XVR5104C-X/	
DH-XVR4104C-X/DH-XVR4108C-X	16
3.2.2 DH-XVR7104E-4KL-X/DH-XVR7108E-4KL-X/DH-XVR7104E-4KL-B-X/	
DH-XVR7108E-4KL-B-X	17
3.2.3 DH-XVR4116HS-X/DH-XVR5108HS-X/DH-XVR5116HS-X/DH-XVR5104HS-4KL-	Х/
DH-XVR5108HS-4KL-X/DH-XVR5104HS-X/DH-XVR4104HS-X/DH-XVR4108HS-X	18
3.2.4 DH-XVR5108H-X/DH-XVR5116H-X/DH-XVR5104H-4KL-X/DH-XVR5108H-4KL-X	(/
DH-XVR5116H-4KL-X/DH-XVR5108HE-X/DH-XVR5116HE-X/DH-XVR7104HE-4KL-X/	DH-XV
R7108HE-4KL-X/DH-XVR7116HE-4KL-X/DH-XVR7108HE-4K-X/DH-XVR5104H-X/DH	-XVR51
04HE-X/DH-XVR5108H-4KL-X-8P	19
3.2.5 DH-XVR4216AN-X/DH-XVR4232AN-X/DH-XVR5216AN-X/DH-XVR5232AN-X/	
DH-XVR5208AN-4KL-X/DH-XVR5216AN-4KL-X/DH-XVR5216A-X/DH-XVR7208A-4KL	X/DH-
XVR7216A-4KL-X/DH-XVR7208A-4K-X/DH-5208AN-4KL-X-8/DH-5216AN-4KL-X-16P	20
3.2.6 DH-XVR7416L-4KL-X/DH-XVR5432L-X	22
3.2.7 DH-XVR7816S-4KL-X/DH-XVR5832S-X	23
3.3 Remote Control Operations	
3.4 Mouse Operations	
4 Connecting Basics	
4.1 Typical Connection Diagram	29
4.2 Connecting to Video and Audio Input and Output	
4.2.1 Video Input	
4.2.2 Video Output	
4.2.3 Audio Input	32
4.2.4 Audio Output	32
4.3 Connecting to Alarm Input and Output	
4.3.1 Introducing Alarm Port	
4.3.2 Alarm Input	
4.3.3 Alarm Output	
4.3.4 Alarm Output Relay Parameters	
4.4 Connecting to RS485 Port	
5 Local Configurations	
5.1 Initial Settings	
5.1.1 Booting up	
5.1.2 Initializing the Device	
5.1.3 Resetting Password	
5.1.4 Setting Up with the Startup Wizard	
5.2 Live View	
5.2.1 Live View Screen	
5.2.2 Live View Control bar	
5.2.3 Navigation Bar	
5.2.4 Shortcut Menu	
5.2.5 Color Setting	71

5.2.6 Live View Display	73
5.2.7 Configuring Tour Settings	
5.3 Entering Main Menu	
5.4 Controlling PTZ Cameras	
5.4.1 Configuring PTZ Connection Settings	
5.4.2 Working with PTZ Control Panel	
5.4.3 Configuring PTZ Functions	
5.4.4 Calling PTZ Functions	
5.4.5 Calling OSD Menu	
5.5 Configuring Camera Settings	
5.5.1 Configuring Image Settings	
5.5.2 Configuring Encode Settings	
5.5.3 Configuring Snapshot Settings	
5.5.4 Configuring Overlay Settings	
5.5.5 Configuring Covered Area Settings	
5.5.6 Configuring Channel Type	
5.5.7 Upgrading Coaxial Camera	
5.6 Configuring Remote Devices	
5.6.1 Adding Remote Devices	
5.6.2 Managing Remote Devices	114
5.7 Configuring Record Settings	
5.7.1 Enabling Record Control	118
5.7.2 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule	119
5.8 Configuring Snapshot Settings	119
5.8.1 Configuring Snapshot Trigger	119
5.8.2 Configuring Snapshot Storage Schedule	
5.8.3 Backing up Snapshots to FTP	
5.9 Playing Back Video	
5.9.1 Enabling Record Control	
5.9.2 Instant Playback	
5.9.3 Main Interface of Video Playback	
5.9.4 Smart Search	
5.9.5 Marking and Playing Back Video	
5.9.6 Playing Back Snapshots	
5.9.7 Playing Back Splices	
5.9.8 Using the File List	
5.10 Alarm Events Settings	
5.10.1 Alarm Information	
5.10.2 Alarm Input Settings	
5.10.3 Alarm Output Settings	
5.10.4 Video Detection	
5.10.5 System Events	
5.11 Configuring IVS Function	
5.11.1 Configuring Intelligent Settings	
5.11.2 Enabling the Intelligent Settings for IP Camera	
5.11.3 Using Smart Search	400

5.12.1 Configuring Face Detection Settings	183
5.12.2 Searching for Detected Faces	
5.12.3 Playing the Detected Faces	
5.13 IoT Function	
5.13.1 Configuring Sensor Settings	
5.13.2 Configuring Temperature and Humidity Camera	
5.13.3 Configuring Wireless Siren	
5.14 Configuring POS Settings	
5.14.1 Searching the Transaction Records	
5.14.2 Configuring POS Settings	
5.15 Configuring Backup Settings	
5.15.1 Finding USB Device	
5.15.2 Backing up Files	
5.16 Network Management	
5.16.1 Configuring Network Settings	
5.16.2 Configuring Network Testing Settings	
5.17 Configuring Account Settings	
5.17.1 Configuring User Account	
5.17.2 Configuring Group Account	
5.17.3 Configuring Onvif Users	
5.18 Audio Management	
5.18.1 Configuring Audio Files	
5.18.2 Configuring Playing Schedule for Audio Files	
5.19 Storage Management	
5.19.1 Configuring Basic Settings	
5.19.2 Configuring the Recording and Snapshot Schedule	
5.19.3 Configuring HDD Manager	
5.19.4 Configuring HDD Detecting Settings	
5.19.5 Configuring Record Estimate	
5.19.6 Configuring FTP Storage Settings	
5.20 Configuring System Settings	
5.20.1 Configuring General System Settings	
5.20.2 Configuring Security Settings	
5.20.3 Configuring System Maintenance Settings	
5.20.4 Exporting and Importing System Settings	
5.20.5 Restoring Default Settings	
5.20.6 Upgrading the Device	
5.21 Viewing Information	
5.21.1 Viewing Version Details	
5.21.2 Viewing Log Information	
5.21.3 Viewing Event Information	
5.21.4 Viewing Network Information	
5.21.5 Viewing HDD Information	
5.21.6 Viewing Channel Information	
5.21.7 Viewing Data Stream Information	
5.21.8 Viewing PoC Information	
5.22 Logout the Device	

6 Web Operations	
6.1 Connecting to Network	
6.2 Logging in the Web	
6.3 Resetting Password	
6.4 Introducing Web Main Menu	
7 FAQ	
Appendix 1 Glossary	
Appendix 2 HDD Capacity Calculation	296
Appendix 3 Compatible Backup Devices	
Appendix 3.1 Compatible USB list	
Appendix 3.2 Compatible SD Card list	
Appendix 3.3 Compatible Portable HDD list	
Appendix 3.4 Compatible USB DVD List	
Appendix 3.5 Compatible SATA DVD List	
Appendix 3.6 Compatible SATA HDD List	300
Appendix 4 Compatible CD/DVD Burner List	305
Appendix 5 Compatible Displayer List	306
Appendix 6 Compatible Switcher	307
Appendix 7 Earthing	308
Appendix 7.1 What Is the Surge	308
Appendix 7.2 The Earthing Modes	309
Appendix 7.3 Thunder Proof Ground Method in the Monitor System	
Appendix 7.4 The Shortcut Way to Check the Electric System by Digital Multimeter	311
Appendix 8 RJ45-RS232 Connection Cable Definition	

## 1.1 Overview

The Device is an excellent digital monitor product for security industry. The embedded LINUX OS assures the stable operation. The H.265 and G.711 technologies assure the high quality image and low bit stream. The frame-by-frame play function displays more details for analysis, and provides the functions such as record, playback, and monitor and assures the synchronization for audio and video. The Device also adopts the advanced control technology and great network data transmission capability.

The Device adopts embedded design to achieve high security and reliability. It can work in the local end and, with strong networking capability it can get connected to the professional surveillance software (Smart PSS) to form a security network to show its powerful remote monitoring function.

The Device is applicable to the areas such as bank, telecom, electricity, traffic, intelligent residential district, factory, warehouse, resources, and water conservancy facilities.

# 1.2 Functions

#### 

The functions might be different depending on the software and hardware version of the model you purchased.

#### **Real-time Surveillance**

- Support VGA port and HDMI port to realize the surveillance through monitors.
- Support HDMI, VGA, and TV output at the same time.

#### **IoT Management**

Provide specific management module for IoT features including humidity and temperature data reports and alarms linkage.

#### **Sensor Integration**

Integrate coaxial cameras with diverse array of sensors such as temperature, humidity and wireless alarm devices.

#### **Storage Management**

- Special data format to guarantee data security and avoid the risk of modifying data viciously.
- Support digital watermark.

#### **Compression Format**

Support multiple-channel audio and video signal. An independent hardware decodes the audio and video signal from each channel to maintain video and audio synchronization.

#### **Backup Function**

- Support backup operation through USB port (such as USB storage disk, portable HDD, and burner).
- Client-end user can download the file from local HDD through network to backup.

#### **Record & Playback**

- Support each channel real-time record independently, and simultaneously support the functions such as search, backward play, network monitor, record search, and download.
- Support various playback modes: slow play, fast play, backward play and frame by frame play.
- Support time title overlay so that you can view event accurate occurred time.
- Support zooming in the selected area in the live view.

#### **Network Operation**

Support network remote real-time monitor, remote record search and remote PTZ control.

#### **Alarm Activation**

- Several relay alarm outputs to realize alarm activation and on-site light control.
- The alarm input port and output port have the protection circuit to guarantee the Device safety.

#### **Communication Port**

- RS485 port can realize alarm input and PTZ control.
- RS232 port can connect to keyboard, COM port of PC or the matrix control.
- Standard Ethernet port can realize network remote access function.
- The dual-network port has the multi-address, fault tolerance, load balance setup mode.

#### PTZ Control

Support PTZ decoder through RS485 port.

#### **Intelligent Operation**

- Support mouse operation function.
- Support "copy and paste" function for the same settings.

#### **UPnP (Universal Plug and Play)**

Establish mapping connection between LAN and WAN through UPnP protocol.

#### **Camera Self-adaptive**

Auto-recognize and work with the PAL or NTSC camera and HD camera.

# 2 Getting Started

## 2.1 Checking the Components

When you receive the Device, please check against the following checking list. If any of the items are missing or damaged, contact the local retailer or after-sales engineer immediately.

Sequence	Checking items		Requirement
1	Package	Appearance	No obvious damage.
		Packing materials	No broken or distorted positions that could be caused by hit.
2	Labels	Labels on the device	Not torn up. NOTE Do not tear up or throw away the labels; otherwise the warranty services are not ensured. You need to provide the serial number of the product when you call the after-sales service.
3	Device	Appearance	No obvious damage.
		Data cables, power cables, fan cables, mainboard	No connection loose.

# 2.2 Installing HDD

Please check if the HDD is already installed in the Device when you first time using the Device. It is suggested to use the HDD recommended officially. Do not use the PC HDD.

# 

Shut down the device and then unplug the power cable before you open the case to replace the HDD.

# 2.2.1 DH-XVR5108C-X/DH-XVR5104C-4KL-X/DH-XVR5104C-X/ DH-XVR4104C-X/DH-XVR4108C-X



1. Remove the screws to take 2. Fix the screws on the HDD off the cover.



but do not fasten them.



4. Turn the DVR upside down to see the screws and then fasten them.



5. Use the HDD cable and power cable to connect HDD and mainboard.



3. Match the screws with the holes on the DVR to place the HDD.



6. Put back the cover and fasten the screws.

## 2.2.2 DH-XVR7104E-4KL-X/DH-XVR7108E-4KL-X/DH-XVR7104E-

## 4KL-B-X/ DH-XVR7108E-4KL-B-X

#### 2.2.2.1 Installing Battery

The battery is only provided with some models.



1. Put the battery cable through the hole.



2. Connect to the cable into the port.

## 2.2.2.2 Installing HDD



Skip step 6 if the battery is not equipped with the model you purchased.



1. Remove the screws to take off the cover.



 Match the holes on the bracket with the screw holes on HDD.

- 2. Remove the screws to take off the bracket.



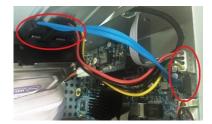
5. Use screws to fix the HDD onto the bracket.



3. Put the HDD onto the bracket.



 (Optional) Put the battery cable through the hole to connect into the cable port.



 Use the HDD cable and power cable to connect HDD and mainboard.



 Install the bracket back and then fasten the screws.

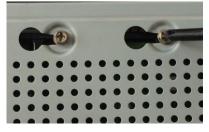


9. Put back the cover and fasten the screws.

2.2.3 DH-XVR4116HS-X/DH-XVR5108HS-X/DH-XVR5116HS-X/DH -XVR5104HS-4KL-X/DH-XVR5108HS-4KL-X/ DH-XVR5108H-X/DH-XVR5116H-X/DH-XVR5104H-4KL-X/DH-XVR 5108H-4KL-X/DH-XVR5116H-4KL-X/DH-XVR5108HE-X/DH-XVR51 16HE-X/DH-XVR7104HE-4KL-X/DH-XVR7108HE-4KL-X/DH-XVR7 116HE-4KL-X/DH-XVR7108HE-4K-X/DH-XVR5104HS-X/ DH-XVR4104HS-X/DH-XVR5104H-X/DH-XVR5104HE-X/DH-XVR4 108HS-X



1. Remove the screws on the rear panel.



 Turn the device to see the back side of it. Aim the screws of the HDD at the holes on the back of the



2. Fix the screws on the HDD but do not be fastened.



 Use the HDD cable and power cable to connect HDD and mainboard.



3. Place the HDD onto the Device.



Put back the cover and fix the screws.

2.2.4 DH-XVR4216AN-X/DH-XVR4232AN-X/DH-XVR5216AN-X/D H-XVR5232AN-X/DH-XVR5208AN-4KL-X/DH-XVR5216AN-4KL-X/ DH-XVR5216A-X/DH-XVR7208A-4KL-X/DH-XVR7216A-4KL-X/DH-XVR7208A-4K-X



1. Remove the screws on the cover.



 Fix the screws onto the HDD, but do not be fastened.



 Put the HDD into the Device.



 Turn the device to see the back side of it. Aim the screws of the HDD at the holes on the back of the device, and then fix the screws.



 Use the HDD cable and power cable to connect HDD and mainboard.



6. Put back the cover and fix the screws.

## 2.2.5 DH-XVR7416L-4KL-X/DH-XVR5432L-X



 Remove the screws on cover.



2. Use the screws to fix the HDD onto the bracket.



3. Connect one end of HDD cable to the HDD.



 Connect the other end of HDD cable to the mainboard.



 Use the power cable to connect HDD and mainboard.



6. Put back the cover and fix the screws.

## 2.2.6 DH-XVR7816S-4KL-X/DH-XVR5832S-X



 Loose the screws on the panel and remove the cover.



 Fix the HDD(s) onto the bracket. Remove the top bracket if you want to install HDD to the bottom bracket.



Connect one end of HDD cable to the HDD.



 Connect the other end of HDD cable to the mainboard



 Use the power cable to connect HDD and mainboard.



Put back the cover and fix the screws.

## 2.3 Installing Device into Rack



Not all models support this function.

To install the DVR into Rack, do the following:

- <u>Step 1</u> Check if the in-house temperature is lower than  $35^{\circ}C(95^{\circ}F)$  and make sure the 15cm (6in.) spacing around the Device for ventilation.
- Step 2 Use six screws to fix the DVR on each side.
- Step 3 Install from the bottom up.



If you want to install more accessories to the rack, take preventive measures to avoid power socket overload.

<u>Step 4</u> Install more accessories to the rack if needed.

# **3** The Grand Tour

This chapter introduces various components of the Device, remote control and mouse operations.

# 3.1 Front Panel

## 3.1.1 DH-XVR5108C-X/DH-XVR5104C-4KL-X/DH-XVR5104C-X/

## DH-XVR4104C-X/DH-XVR4108C-X

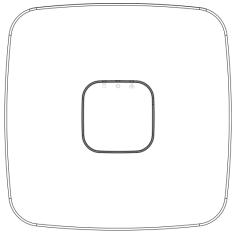
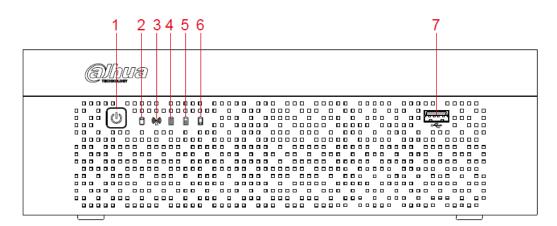


Figure 3-1

lcon	Name	Function	
0		• The indicator is off when the HDD is running normally.	
Ū	HDD status indicator	<ul> <li>The indicator glows blue when the HDD is in</li> </ul>	
		malfunction.	
		• The indicator is off when the power is connected	
ധ	Power status	abnormally.	
U	indicator	• The indicator glows blue when the power is connected	
		normally.	
		• The indicator is off when the network connection is	
品	Network status	correct.	
66	indicator	• The indicator glows blue when the network connection	
		is abnormal.	

## 4KL-B-X/ DH-XVR7108E-4KL-B-X



#### Figure 3-2

No.	Button/Icon	Function	
1	POWER	Turns on/off the DVR. The indicator glows blue when the DVR is turned on.	
2	HDD status indicator	The indicator glows blue when the HDD is in malfunction.	
3	Network status indicator	The indicator glows blue when the network connection is abnormal.	
4,5,6	Battery status indicator	<ul> <li>abnormal.</li> <li>When the battery remains full or no less than sixty percent, the No.4 indicator is on, and the No.5 and No.6 are out.</li> <li>When the battery remains between thirty percent and sixty percent, the No.5 indicator is on and the others are out.</li> <li>When the battery remains between one percent and thirty percent, the No.6 indicator is on and the others are out.</li> <li>When the battery is exhausted, the DVR is turned off, or there is no battery attached to the DVR, all the three indicators are out.</li> </ul>	
7	USB port	Connects to external devices such as USB storage device, keyboard and mouse.	

3.1.3 DH-XVR5108H-X/DH-XVR5116H-X/DH-XVR5104H-4KL-X/D H-XVR5108H-4KL-X/DH-XVR5116H-4KL-X/DH-XVR5108HE-X/DH-XVR5116HE-X/DH-XVR4116HS-X/DH-XVR5108HS-X/DH-XVR511 6HS-X/DH-XVR5104HS-4KL-X/DH-XVR5108HS-4KL-X/ DH-XVR5104HS-X/DH-XVR4104HS-X/DH-XVR4108HS-X/DH-XVR 5104H-X/DH-XVR5104HE-X

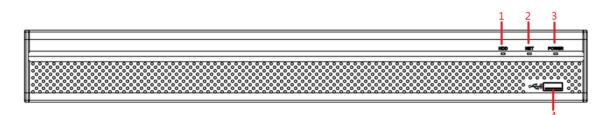


Figure 3-3

No.	Port Name	Function
1	HDD	Glows blue when HDD status is abnormal.
2	NET	Glows blue when network status is abnormal.
3	POWER	Glows blue when the power is connected properly.
4	USB port	Connects to peripheral devices such as USB storage device, keyboard and mouse.

Table 3-3

## 3.1.4 DH-XVR7104HE-4KL-X/DH-XVR7108HE-4KL-X/DH-XVR711

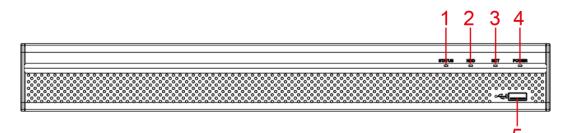
## 6HE-4KL-X/DH-XVR7108HE-4K-X





No.	Port Name	Function
1 US	USB port	Connects to peripheral devices such as USB storage device,
		keyboard and mouse.

# 3.1.5 DH-XVR4216AN-X/DH-XVR4232AN-X/DH-XVR5216AN-X/D H-XVR5232AN-X/DH-XVR5208AN-4KL-X/DH-XVR5216AN-4KL-X/ DH-XVR5216A-X



#### Figure 3-5

No.	Port Name	Function
1	Status indicator light	Glows blue when the device is working properly.
2	HDD	Glows blue when HDD status is abnormal.
3	NET	Glows blue when network status is abnormal.
4	POWER	Glows blue when the power is connected properly.
5	USB port	Connects to the external devices such as keyboard, mouse, and USB storage device.

Table 3-5

## 3.1.6 DH-XVR7208A-4KL-X/DH-XVR7216A-4KL-X/DH-XVR7208A-

4K-X



Figure 3-6

No.	Port Name	Function
1	Status indicator light	Glows blue when the device is working properly.
2	USB port	Connects to the external devices such as keyboard, mouse, and USB storage device.



## 3.1.7 DH-XVR7416L-4KL-X



Figure 3-7

No.	Port Name	Function
1	IR receiver	Receives infrared signal from remote control.
2	USB port	Connects to peripheral devices such as USB storage device, keyboard and mouse.

Table 3-7

## 3.1.8 DH-XVR7816S-4KL-X



Figure 3-8

No.	Port Name	Function
1	IR receiver	Receives infrared signal from remote control.
2	2 USB port	Connects to peripheral devices such as USB storage
-		device, keyboard and mouse.

Table 3-8

## 3.1.9 DH-XVR5432L-X

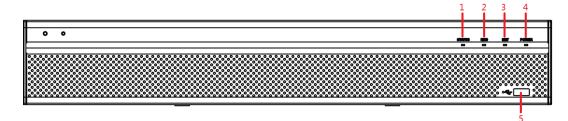


Figure 3-9

No.	Port Name	Function

No.	Port Name	Function
1	Status indicator light	Glows blue when the device is working properly.
2	HDD	Glows blue when HDD status is abnormal.
3	NET	Glows blue when network status is abnormal.
4	POWER	Glows blue when the power is connected properly.
5	USB port	Connects to peripheral devices such as USB storage device, keyboard and mouse.

Table 3-9

## 3.1.10 DH-XVR5832S-X

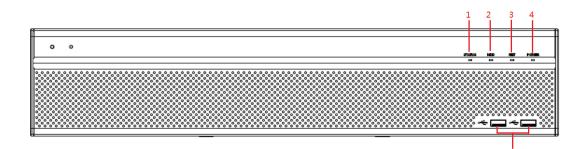


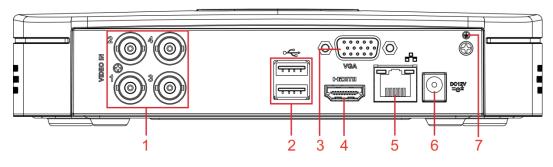
Figure 3-10

No.	Port Name	Function
1	Status indicator light	Glows blue when the device is working properly.
2	HDD	Glows blue when HDD status is abnormal.
3	NET	Glows blue when network status is abnormal.
4	POWER	Glows blue when the power is connected properly.
5	USB port	Connects to peripheral devices such as USB storage
-		device, keyboard and mouse.

# 3.2 Rear Panel

## 3.2.1 DH-XVR5108C-X/DH-XVR5104C-4KL-X/DH-XVR5104C-X/

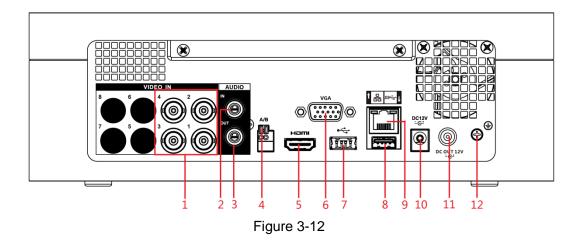
## DH-XVR4104C-X/DH-XVR4108C-X



#### Figure 3-11

No.	Port Name	Function
1	Video input port	Connects to analog camera to input video signal.
2	USB port	Connects to external devices such as USB storage device, keyboard and mouse.
3	VGA port	Outputs analog video data to the connected display with VGA port.
4	HDMI port	High definition audio and video signal output port. The port outputs the uncompressed high definition video and multi-channel audio data to the connected display with HDMI port.
5	Network port	Connects to Ethernet port.
6	Power input port	Inputs DC 12V power.
7	<b>\end{cases}</b>	Ground terminal.

## 4KL-B-X/ DH-XVR7108E-4KL-B-X



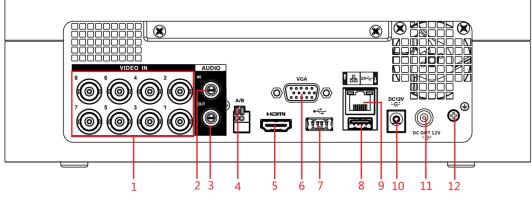


Figure 3-13

No.	Port Name	Function
1	Video input port	Connects to analog camera to input video signal.
2	Audio input port	Receives audio signal output from the devices such as microphone.
3	Audio output port	Outputs audio signal to the devices such as the sound box.
4	RS485 communication port	Connects to the control devices such as speed dome PTZ. RS485_A port is connected by the cable A and RS485_B is connected to the cable B.
5	HDMI port	High definition audio and video signal output port. The port outputs the uncompressed high definition video and multi-channel audio data to the connected display with HDMI port.
6	VGA port	Outputs analog video data to the connected display with VGA port.
7, 8	USB port	Connects to external devices such as USB storage device, keyboard and mouse.
9	Network port	Connects to Ethernet port.

No.	Port Name	Function
10	Power input port	Inputs DC 12V power.
11	Power output port	Outputs DC 12V power.
12	Ground	Ground terminal.

Table 3-12

# 3.2.3 DH-XVR4116HS-X/DH-XVR5108HS-X/DH-XVR5116HS-X/DH -XVR5104HS-4KL-X/DH-XVR5108HS-4KL-X/DH-XVR5104HS-X/ DH-XVR4104HS-X/DH-XVR4108HS-X

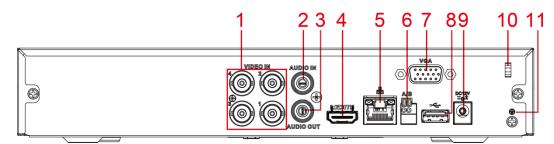


Figure 3-14

No.	Port Name	Function
1	Video input port	Connects to analog camera to input video signal.
2	Audio input port	Receives audio signal output from the devices such as microphone.
3	Audio output port	Outputs audio signal to the devices such as the sound box.
4	HDMI port	High definition audio and video signal output port. The port outputs the uncompressed high definition video and multi-channel audio data to the connected display with HDMI port.
5	Network port	Connects to Ethernet port.
6	RS485 communication port	Connects to the control devices such as speed dome PTZ. RS485_A port is connected by the cable A and RS485_B is connected to the cable B.
7	VGA port	Outputs analog video data to the connected display with VGA port.
8	USB port	Connects to external devices such as USB storage device, keyboard and mouse.
9	Power input port	Inputs DC 12V power.
10	Power cable fastener	Use clamp to secure the power cable on the DVR in case there is any loss.
11	÷	Ground terminal.

3.2.4 DH-XVR5108H-X/DH-XVR5116H-X/DH-XVR5104H-4KL-X/D H-XVR5108H-4KL-X/DH-XVR5116H-4KL-X/DH-XVR5108HE-X/DH-XVR5116HE-X/DH-XVR7104HE-4KL-X/DH-XVR7108HE-4KL-X/DH -XVR7116HE-4KL-X/DH-XVR7108HE-4K-X/DH-XVR5104H-X/DH-X VR5104HE-X/DH-XVR5108H-4KL-X-8P

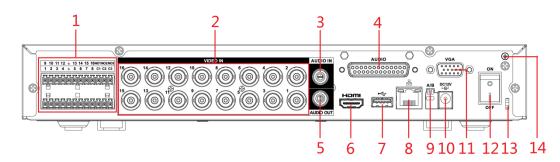


Figure 3-15

No.	Port Name	Function
1	Alarm input port 1–16	<ul> <li>4 groups of alarm input ports (Group 1: port 1 to port 4; Group 2: port 5 to port 8; Group 3: port 9 to port 12; Group 4: port 13 to port 16). These ports receive the signal from the external alarm source. There are two types: NO (normal open) and NC (normal close).</li> <li>NOTE</li> <li>When your alarm input device is using external power, please make sure the alarm input device and the Device have the same ground.</li> </ul>
	Alarm output port 1–3 (NO1–NO3; C1–C3)	<ul> <li>3 groups of alarm output ports (Group 1: port NO1–C1, Group 2: port NO2–C2, Group 3: port NO3–C3). These ports output alarm signal to the alarm device. Please make sure power supply to the external alarm device.</li> <li>NO: Normal open alarm output port.</li> <li>C: Alarm output public end.</li> </ul>
	Ŧ	Ground.
2	Video input port	Connects to analog camera to input video signal.
3	Audio input port	Receives audio signal output from the devices such as microphone. It corresponds to video input port 1.
4	DB25 port	Connects to the audio splitter taken from the package to convert to audio input port which receives the audio signal from devices such as microphone. It corresponds to video input ports 2–16.
5	Audio output port	Outputs audio signal to the devices such as the sound box.

No.	Port Name	Function
6	HDMI port	High definition audio and video signal output port. The port outputs the uncompressed high definition video and multi-channel audio data to the connected display with HDMI port.
7	USB port	Connects to external devices such as USB storage device, keyboard and mouse.
8	Network port	Connects to Ethernet port.
9	RS485 communication port	Connects to the control devices such as speed dome PTZ. RS485_A port is connected by the cable A and RS485_B is connected to the cable B.
10	Power input port	Inputs DC 12V power.
11	VGA port	Outputs analog video data to the connected display with VGA port.
12	Power button	Turns on/off the DVR.
13	Power cable fastener	Use a cable tie to secure the power cable on the DVR to prevent loss.
14	ŧ	Ground terminal.

Table 3-14

3.2.5 DH-XVR4216AN-X/DH-XVR4232AN-X/DH-XVR5216AN-X/D H-XVR5232AN-X/DH-XVR5208AN-4KL-X/DH-XVR5216AN-4KL-X/ DH-XVR5216A-X/DH-XVR7208A-4KL-X/DH-XVR7216A-4KL-X/DH-XVR7208A-4K-X/DH-5208AN-4KL-X-8/DH-5216AN-4KL-X-16P

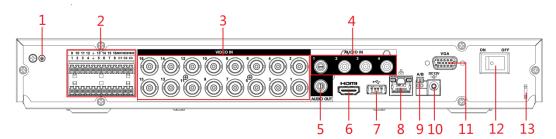


Figure 3-16

No.	Port Name	Function
1	<b>(</b>	Ground terminal.

No.	Port Name	Function
2	Alarm input port 1–16	4 groups of alarm input ports (Group 1: port 1 to port 4; Group 2: port 5 to port 8; Group 3: port 9 to port 12; Group 4: port 13 to port 16). These ports receive the signal from the external alarm source. There are two types: NO (normal open) and NC (normal close). NOTE When your alarm input device is using external power, please make sure the alarm input device and the DVR connect to the same ground.
	Alarm output port 1–3 (NO1–NO3; C1–C3)	<ul> <li>3 groups of alarm output ports. (Group 1: port NO1– C1,Group 2:port NO2–C2,Group 3:port NO3–C3)). These ports output alarm signal to the alarm device. Please make sure power supply to the external alarm device.</li> <li>NO: Normal open alarm output port.</li> <li>C: Alarm output public end.</li> </ul>
	Ŧ	Ground.
3	Video input port	Connects to analog camera to input video signal.
4	Audio input port	Receives audio signal output from the devices such as microphone.
5	Audio output port	Outputs audio signal to the devices such as the sound box.
6	HDMI port	High definition audio and video signal output port. The port outputs the uncompressed high definition video and multi-channel audio data to the connected display with HDMI port.
7	USB port	Connects to the external devices such as keyboard, mouse, and USB storage device.
8	Network port	Connects to Ethernet port.
9	RS485 communication port	Connects to the control devices such as speed dome PTZ. RS485_A port is connected by the cable A and RS485_B is connected to the cable B.
10	Power input port	Inputs DC 12V power.
11	VGA port	Outputs analog video data to the connected display with VGA port.
12	Power button	Turns on/off the DVR.
13	Power cable fastener	Use clamp to secure the power cable on the DVR in case there is any loss.

## 3.2.6 DH-XVR7416L-4KL-X/DH-XVR5432L-X

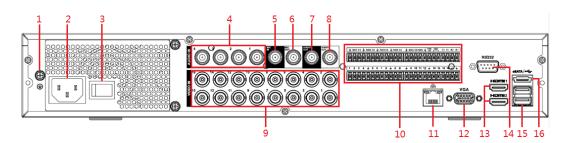


Figure 3-17

No.	Port Name	Function
1	ŧ	Ground terminal.
2	Power input port	Inputs power.
3	Power button	Turns on/off the DVR.
4	Audio input port	Receives audio signal output from the devices such as microphone.
5	Audio input port (MIC IN)	Tow-way talk input port which receives analog audio signal output from the devices such as microphone and pickup.
6	Audio output port (MIC OUT)	Tow-way talk output port which outputs the analog audio signal to the devices such as the sound box.
7	Audio output port	Outputs audio signal to the devices such as the sound box.
8	Video output port	Connects to video output devices such as TV.
9	Video input port	Connects to analog camera to input video signal.
10	Alarm input port 1–16	<ul> <li>4 groups of alarm input ports (Group 1: port 1 to port 4; Group 2: port 5 to port 8; Group 3: port 9 to port 12; Group 4: port 13 to port 16). These ports receive the signal from the external alarm source. There are two types: NO (normal open) and NC (normal close).</li> <li>NOTE</li> <li>When your alarm input device is using external power, please make sure the input device and the DVR connect to the same ground.</li> </ul>
	Alarm output port 1–5 (NO1–NO5; C1–C5; NC5)	<ul> <li>5 groups of alarm output ports (Group 1: port NO1– C1,Group 2:port NO2–C2,Group 3:port NO3–C3, Group 4: port NO4–C4, Group 5: port NO5, C5, NC5). These ports output alarm signal to the alarm device. Please make sure power supply to the external alarm device.</li> <li>NO: Normal open alarm output port.</li> <li>C: Alarm output public end.</li> <li>NC: Normal close alarm output port.</li> </ul>

No.	Port Name	Function
	RS485 communication port	Connects to the control devices such as speed dome PTZ. RS485_A port is connected by the cable A and RS485_B is connected to the cable B.
	Four-wire full-duplex 485 port (T+, T-, R+, R-)	Four-wire full-duplex 485 port. T+ and T- is the output wire; R+ and R- is the input wire.
	Power output control for alarm (CTRL 12V)	<ul> <li>Controls power output for alarm. The current is 500mA.</li> <li>Turns off power output when there is alarm output.</li> <li>Turns on power output when the alarm is cleared.</li> </ul>
	12V power output port	Provides power to external devices such as camera and alarm device. Please note the power supply shall be below 1A.
	Ŧ	Ground.
10	Network port	Connects to Ethernet port.
12	VGA port	Outputs analog video data to the connected display with VGA port.
13	HDMI port	High definition audio and video signal output port. The port outputs the uncompressed high definition video and multi-channel audio data to the connected display with HDMI port.
14	RS232 debug COM	The port is used for general COM debug to configure IP address or transfer transparent COM data.
15	USB port	Connects to the external devices such as keyboard, mouse, and USB storage device.
16	eSATA port	External SATA port which connects to the device with SATA port. Perform the jumper configuration when connecting HDD.

Table 3-16

## 3.2.7 DH-XVR7816S-4KL-X/DH-XVR5832S-X

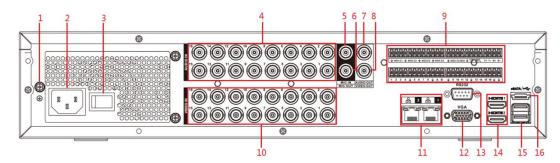


Figure 3-18

No.	Port Name	Function
1	GND	Ground.
2	Power input port	Inputs power.
3	Power button	Turns on/off the Device.

No.	Port Name	Function
4	Audio input port	Receives the analog audio signal output from the devices such as microphone.
5	Audio input port (MIC IN)	Tow-way talk input port which receives the analog audio signal output from the devices such as microphone, pickup.
6	Audio output port (MIC OUT)	Tow-way talk output port which outputs the analog audio signal to the devices such as the sound box.
7	Audio output port	Outputs the analog audio signal to the devices such as the sound box.
8	Video output port	Connect to video output devices such as TV.
9	Alarm input port 1–16	<ul> <li>4 groups of alarm output ports (Group 1: port 1 to port 4; Group 2: port 5 to port 8; Group 3: port 9 to port 12; Group 4: port 13 to port 16). These ports receive the signal from the external alarm source. There are two types; NO (normal open) and NC (normal close).</li> <li>When your alarm input device is using external power, please make sure the device and the NVR have the same ground.</li> </ul>
	Alarm output port 1–5 (NO1–NO5; C1–C5; NC5)	<ul> <li>5 groups of alarm output ports. (Group 1: port NO1– C1,Group 2:port NO2–C2,Group 3:port NO3–C3, Group 4: port NO4–C4, Group 5: port NO5, C5, NC5). These ports output alarm signal to the alarm device. Please make sure power supply to the external alarm device.</li> <li>NO: Normal open alarm output port.</li> <li>C: Alarm output public end.</li> <li>NC: Normal close alarm output port.</li> </ul>
	RS-485 communication port	You can connect to the control devices such as speed dome PTZ. RS485_A port is connected by the cable A and RS485_B is connected to the cable B.
	Four-wire full-duplex 485 port (T+, T-, R+, R-)	Four-wire full-duplex 485 port. T+ and T- is the output wire; R+ and R- is the input wire.
	Control power output (CTRL 12V)	Controller 12V power output. It is to control the on-off alarm relay output.
	12V power output port	Provides power to external devices such as camera and alarm device. Please note the supplying power shall be below 1A.
	Ŧ	Ground.
10	Video input port	Connect to analog camera to input video signal.
11	Network port	Connects to Ethernet port.
12	VGA video output	Outputs analog video signal. It can connect to the monitor to view analog video.

No.	Port Name	Function
13	RS232 debug COM.	It is for general COM debug to configure IP address or transfer transparent COM data.
14	HDMI port	<ul><li>High definition audio and video signal output port. It outputs the same video source as VGA. It supports 4K resolution output and supports mouse operation and control.</li><li>Please note when the HDMI output resolution is 4K, the VGA output stops.</li></ul>
15	USB port	Connects to the external devices such as keyboard, mouse, and USB storage device.
16	eSATA port	External SATA port which connects to the device with SATA port. Perform the jumper configuration when connecting HDD.

Table 3-17

# 3.3 Remote Control Operations

## 

Please note the remote control is not our standard accessory and might not be included in the accessary bag. It is supplied dependent on the model you purchased.

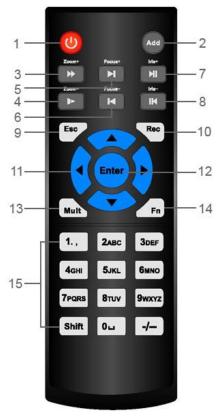


Figure 3-19

No.	Name	Function
1	Power button	Press this button to boot up or shut down the device.
2	Address	Press this button to input device serial number, so that you can control the Device.

No.	Name	Function			
3	Forward	Multi-step forward speed and normal speed playback.			
4	Slow motion	Multi-step slow motion speed or normal playback.			
5	Next record	In playback state, press this button to play back the next video.			
6	Previous record	In playback state, press this button to play back the previous video.			
7 8 9	Play/Pause Reverse/pause Esc.	<ul> <li>In normal playback state, press this button to pause playback.</li> <li>In pause state, press this button to resume to normal playback.</li> <li>In live view window interface, press this button to enter video search menu.</li> <li>In the reverse playback state, press this button to pause reverse playback.</li> <li>In the reverse playback pause state, press this button to resume to playback.</li> <li>In the reverse playback pause state, press this button to resume to playback reversing state.</li> <li>Go back to previous menu or cancel current operation (close front interface or control).</li> <li>Start or stop record manually.</li> <li>In record interface, use the direction buttons to select the</li> </ul>			
10	Record	<ul> <li>In record interface, use the direction buttons to select the channel that you want to record.</li> <li>Press this button for at least 1.5 seconds, and the manual record interface will be displayed.</li> </ul>			
11	Direction keys	Switch between current activated controls by going left or right. In playback state, the keys control the playback progress bar. Aux function (such as operating the PTZ menu).			
12	Enter/menu key	<ul> <li>Confirms an operation.</li> <li>Go to the OK button.</li> <li>Go to the menu.</li> </ul>			
13	Multiple-window switch	Switch between multiple-window and one-window.			
14	Fn	<ul> <li>In single-channel monitoring mode, press this button to display the PTZ control and color setting functions.</li> <li>Switch the PTZ control menu in PTZ control interface.</li> <li>In motion detection interface, press this button with direction keys to complete setup.</li> <li>In text mode, press and hold this button to delete the last character. To use the clearing function: Long press this button for 1.5 seconds.</li> <li>In HDD menu, switch HDD recording time and other information as indicated in the pop-up message.</li> </ul>			
15	Alphanumeric keys	<ul> <li>Input password, numbers.</li> <li>Switch channel.</li> <li>Press Shift to switch the input method.</li> </ul>			

Table 3-18

# 3.4 Mouse Operations

	NOTE
--	------

The operations are based on the considerations for right-handed users.

Operation         Function           Password input dialogue box pops up if you have not logged in yet. In live view window interface, you can go to the main menu.         Modername           When you have selected one menu item, click it to view menu content.         Implement the control operation.           Modify checkbox or motion detection status.         Click combo box to pop up drop-down list.           In text box, click the corresponding button on the panel to enter a numeral or English character (small/capitalized).         In English input mode: Click I to enter a backspace and click I to delete the previous character.           Click left mouse button         I numeral input mode: Click I to clear and click I to delete the previous character.           Double-click left mouse button         Implement special control operations such as double-click one item in the file list to play back the video.           Double-click left mouse button         Implement special control operations such as double-click one item in the file list to play back the video.           Double-click left mouse button         Right-click in live view window interface, the shortcut menu is displayed. For different series product, the shortcut menu may vary.           Exit current menu without saving the modification.         In numeral input box: Increase or decrease numeral value.           Switch the items in the check box.         Page up or page down.           Point to select and move         Select current control and move it.           Dragging a         Select motion detecti	The operations are based on the considerations for right-handed users.						
In live view window interface, you can go to the main menu.         When you have selected one menu item, click it to view menu content.         Implement the control operation.         Modify checkbox or motion detection status.         Click combo box to pop up drop-down list.         In text box, click the corresponding button on the panel to enter a numeral or English character (small/capitalized).         • In English input mode: Click • to enter a backspace and click • to delete the previous character. <b>1 @ @ f f @ h i k ! Enter 7 ! @ 9</b> • In numeral input mode: Click • to clear and click • to delete the previous character. <b>1 @ @ f f @ h i k ! Enter 7 ! @ 9</b> • In numeral input mode: Click • to clear and click • to delete the previous character. <b>1 @ 1 f @ h i k ! Enter 7 ! @ 9</b> • In numeral input mode: Click • to clear and click • to delete the previous character. <b>1 @ 1 f @ h i k ! Enter 7 ! @ 9</b> • In numeral input mode: Click • to clear and click • to delete the previous character. <b>1 @ 1 f @ h i k ! Enter 7 ! @ 9</b> • In numeral input mode: Click • to clear and click • to delete the previous character. <b>1 @ 1 @ 1 f @ h i k ! Enter 7 ! @ 1 @ 1 @ 1 @ 1 @ 1 @ 1 @ 1 @ 1 @ 1 @</b>	Operation	Function					
When you have selected one menu item, click it to view menu content.           Implement the control operation.           Modify checkbox or motion detection status.           Click combo box to pop up drop-down list.           In text box, click the corresponding button on the panel to enter a numeral or English character (small/capitalized).           In English input mode: Click I to enter a backspace and click I to delete the previous character.           Implement special control operations such as double-click in to delete the previous character.           Implement special control operations such as double-click one item in the file list to play back the video.           Double-click left mouse button           Right-click           Right-click in live view window interface, the shortcut menu is displayed. For different series product, the shortcut menu may vary.           Exit current menu without saving the modification.           In numeral input box: Increase or decrease numeral value.           Switch the items in the check box.           Point to select and move							
Implement the control operation.         Modify checkbox or motion detection status.         Click combo box to pop up drop-down list.         In text box, click the corresponding button on the panel to enter a numeral or English character (small/capitalized).         • In English input mode: Click • to enter a backspace and click • to delete the previous character.         Implement special control operations such as double-click one item in the previous character.         Implement special control operations such as double-click one item in the file list to play back the video.         Double-click left         Might-click         Right-click         Click scroll wheel button         Point to select and move         Switch the items in the check box.         Point to select and move							
Modify checkbox or motion detection status.         Click combo box to pop up drop-down list.         In text box, click the corresponding button on the panel to enter a numeral or English character (small/capitalized).         • In English input mode: Click I to enter a backspace and click I to delete the previous character.         Image: Click left mouse button         button         Image: Click left mouse button         Right-click left mouse button         Right-click in live view window interface, the shortcut menu is displayed. For different series product, the shortcut menu may vary.         Exit current menu without saving the modification.         In numeral input box: Increase or decrease numeral value.         Click scroll wheel bu		When you have selected one menu item, click it to view menu content.					
Click combo box to pop up drop-down list.           In text box, click the corresponding button on the panel to enter a numeral or English character (small/capitalized).           In English input mode: Click is to enter a backspace and click is to delete the previous character.           Image: Click left mouse button		· · · ·					
Click left mouse       In text box, click the corresponding button on the panel to enter a numeral or English character (small/capitalized).         Click left mouse       In English input mode: Click I to enter a backspace and click I to delete the previous character.         Image: Click left mouse       Image: Click I to enter a backspace and click I to delete the previous character.         Image: Click left mouse       Image: Click I to clear and click I to delete the previous character.         Image: Click left mouse       Implement special control operations such as double-click one item in the file list to play back the video.         Double-click left mouse button       Implement special control operations such as double-click one item in the file list to play back the video.         Double-click left mouse button       Implement special control operations such as double-click one item in the file list to play back the video.         Double-click left mouse button       Implement special control operations such as double-click one item in the file list to play back the video.         Double-click current video again to go back to previous multiple-window mode.       In numtral input box: Increase or decrease numeral value.         Right-click       In numeral input box: Increase or decrease numeral value.         Click scroll whee button       Switch the items in the check box.         Page up or page down.       Page up or page down.         Point to select and move       Select current control and move it.		Modify checkbox or motion detection status.					
Click left mouse       or English character (small/capitalized).         Click left mouse       • In English input mode: Click I to enter a backspace and click I to delete the previous character.         Image: Click left mouse       Image: Click I to enter a backspace and click I to delete the previous character.         Image: Click left mouse       Image: Click I to enter a backspace and click I to delete the previous character.         Image: Click left mouse button       Implement special control operations such as double-click one item in the file list to play back the video.         Double-click left mouse button       Immultiple-window mode, double-click one channel to view in full-window. Double-click current video again to go back to previous multiple-window mode.         Right-click       Right-click in live view window interface, the shortcut menu is displayed. For different series product, the shortcut menu may vary.         Exit current menu without saving the modification.       In numeral input box: Increase or decrease numeral value.         Click scroll wheel button       Switch the items in the check box.         Page up or page down.       Page up or page down.         Point to select and move       Select current control and move it.		Click combo box to pop up drop-down list.					
Click left mouse button       to delete the previous character.         Image: click left mouse button       Image: click left mouse image: click left mouse image: click left mouse left mou							
button bu	Click laft mayon	In English input mode: Click      to enter a backspace and click					
Image: Second		to delete the previous character.					
previous character.123312331233123312331233123312331233123312331233123313341334133413341334133413341334133413341334133413341334 <td>battom</td> <td>qwertyuiop/456asdfghjkl:789</td>	battom	qwertyuiop/456asdfghjkl:789					
Image: Provide the items in the check box.Point to select a moveSelect current control and move it.		<ul> <li>In numeral input mode: Click I to clear and click I to delete the</li> </ul>					
TowardTowardDouble-click left mouse buttonImplement special control operations such as double-click one item in the file list to play back the video.In multiple-window mode, double-click one channel to view in full-window. Double-click current video again to go back to previous multiple-window mode.Right-clickRight-click in live view window interface, the shortcut menu is displayed. For different series product, the shortcut menu may vary.Exit current menu without saving the modification.Click scroll wheel buttonIn numeral input box: Increase or decrease numeral value.Switch the items in the check box.Point to select and moveSelect current control and move it.		previous character.					
Double-click left mouse buttonfile list to play back the video.In multiple-window mode, double-click one channel to view in full-window. Double-click current video again to go back to previous multiple-window mode.Right-clickRight-click in live view window interface, the shortcut menu is displayed. For different series product, the shortcut menu may vary.Exit current menu without saving the modification.Click scroll wheel buttonIn numeral input box: Increase or decrease numeral value.Switch the items in the check box.Point to select and moveSelect current control and move it.		$ \begin{array}{c} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 7 & 8 & 9 \\ 0 & \checkmark \leftarrow \end{array} $					
Double-click left mouse button       In multiple-window mode, double-click one channel to view in full-window. Double-click current video again to go back to previous multiple-window mode.         Right-click in live view window interface, the shortcut menu is displayed. For different series product, the shortcut menu may vary.         Exit current menu without saving the modification.         Click scroll wheel button       In numeral input box: Increase or decrease numeral value.         Switch the items in the check box.         Page up or page down.         Point to select and move       Select current control and move it.		Implement special control operations such as double-click one item in the					
mouse button       In multiple-window mode, double-click one channel to view in full-window. Double-click current video again to go back to previous multiple-window mode.         Right-click       Right-click in live view window interface, the shortcut menu is displayed. For different series product, the shortcut menu may vary.         Exit current menu without saving the modification.       Exit current menu without saving the modification.         Click scroll wheel button       Switch the items in the check box.         Point to select and move       Select current control and move it.	Double-click left						
Right-click       different series product, the shortcut menu may vary.         Exit current menu without saving the modification.         Click scroll wheel button       In numeral input box: Increase or decrease numeral value.         Switch the items in the check box.         Page up or page down.         Point to select and move         Select current control and move it.		Double-click current video again to go back to previous multiple-window					
Click scroll wheel buttonIn numeral input box: Increase or decrease numeral value.Switch the items in the check box.Point to select and moveSelect current control and move it.	Right-click						
Click scroll wheel button Switch the items in the check box. Page up or page down. Point to select and move Select current control and move it.	0	Exit current menu without saving the modification.					
button       Switch the items in the check box.         Page up or page down.         Point to select and move         Select current control and move it.		In numeral input box: Increase or decrease numeral value.					
Page up or page down.       Point to select and move     Select current control and move it.		Switch the items in the check box.					
and move Select current control and move it.		Page up or page down.					
Dragging a Select motion detection zone.	Select current control and move it.						
	Dragging a	Select motion detection zone.					

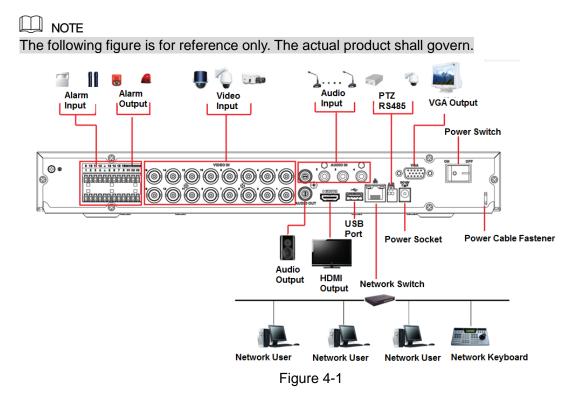
Operation	Function
selection box with left mouse button	Select privacy mask zone.

Table 3-19

# 4 Connecting Basics

This chapter introduces the typical connection diagrams and ports connections.

# 4.1 Typical Connection Diagram



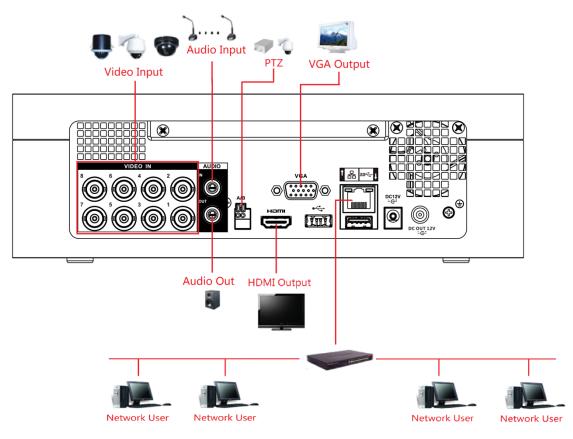


Figure 4-2

# 4.2 Connecting to Video and Audio Input and Output

#### 4.2.1 Video Input

The video input interface is BNC. The input video format includes: PAL/NTSC BNC ( $1.0V_{P-P}$ ,  $75\Omega$ ).

The video signal should comply with your national standards.

The input video signal shall have high SNR, low distortion; low interference, natural color and suitable lightness.

#### Guarantee the stability and reliability of the camera signal

The camera shall be installed in a cool, dry place away from direct sunlight, inflammable, explosive substances and etc.

The camera and the DVR should have the same grounding to ensure the normal operation of the camera.

#### Guarantee stability and reliability of the transmission line

Please use high quality, sound shielded BNC. Please select suitable BNC model according to the transmission distance.

If the distance is too long, you should use twisted pair cable, and you can add video compensation devices or use optical fiber to ensure video quality.

You should keep the video signal away from the strong electromagnetic interference, especially the high tension current.

#### Keep connection lugs in well contact

The signal line and shielded wire should be fixed firmly and in well connection. Avoid dry joint, lap welding and oxidation.

#### 4.2.2 Video Output

Video output includes a BNC (PAL/NTSC1.0V<sub>P-P</sub>, 75 $\Omega$ ) output, a VGA output and HDMI output. System supports BNC, VGA and HDMI output at the same time.

When you are using pc-type monitor to replace the monitor, please pay attention to the following points:

- To defer aging, do not allow the pc monitor to run for a long time.
- Regular demagnetization will keep device maintain proper status.
- Keep it away from strong electromagnetic interference devices.

Using TV as video output device is not a reliable substitution method. You also need to reduce the working hour and control the interference from power supply and other devices. The low quality TV may result in device damage.

# 4.2.3 Audio Input

These series products audio input port adopt BNC port.

Due to high impedance of audio input, please use active sound pick-up.

Audio transmission is similar to video transmission. Try to avoid interference, dry joint, loose contact and it shall be away from high tension current.

# 4.2.4 Audio Output

The audio output signal parameter is usually over 200mv 1K $\Omega$  (BNC or RCA). It can directly connect to low impedance earphone, active sound box or amplifier-drive audio output device.

If the sound box and the pick-up cannot be separated spatially, it is easy to arouse squeaking. In this case you can adopt the following measures:

- Use better sound pick-up with better directing property.
- Reduce the volume of the sound box.
- Using more sound-absorbing materials in decoration can reduce voice echo and improve acoustics environment.
- Adjust the layout to reduce happening of the squeaking.

# 4.3 Connecting to Alarm Input and Output

Please read the followings before connecting.

#### Alarm input

- Please make sure alarm input mode is grounding alarm input.
- Grounding signal is needed for alarm input.
- Alarm input needs the low level voltage signal.
- Alarm input mode can be either NC (normal Open) or NO (Normal Close).
- When you are connecting two DVRs or you are connecting one DVR and one other device, please use a relay to separate them.

#### Alarm output

The alarm output port should not be connected to high power load directly (It shall be less than 1A) to avoid high current which may result in relay damage. Please use the contactor to realize the connection between the alarm output port and the load.

#### How to connect PTZ decoder

- Ensure the decoder has the same grounding with DVR, otherwise you may not control the PTZ. Shielded twisted wire is recommended and the shielded layer is used to connect to the grounding.
- Avoid high voltage. Ensure proper wiring and some thunder protection measures.
- For too long signal wires, 120Ω should be parallel connected between A, B lines on the far end to reduce reflection and guarantee the signal quality.
- "485 A, B" of DVR cannot parallel connect with "485 port" of other device.
- The voltage between of A, B lines of the decoder should be less than 5V.

Please make sure the front-end device has soundly earthed

Improper grounding may result in chip damage.

# 4.3.1 Introducing Alarm Port

#### 

The alarm input ports are dependent on the model you purchased.



I 2 3 4 🕂 5 6 7 8 🕂 A B 🚽 9 10 11 12 🚽 13 14 15 16 🚽 🚽

Figure	4-3

Icon	Description				
1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6,					
7, 8, 9, 10, 11,	ALARM 1 to ALARM 16. The alarm becomes active in low voltage.				
12, 13, 14, 15, 16					
NO1 C1, NO2 C2,	There are four groups of normal open activation output (on/off button).				
NO3 C3, NO4 C4					
NO5 C5 NC5,	There is one group of normal open activation output (on/off button).				
	Control power output of the alarm output channel 6. Voltage current:				
CTRL 12V	500mA.				
GIRL IZV	• When there is an alarm output, close the power output.				
	• When the alarm is cancelled, open the power output.				
+12V	Rated current.				
τιζν	Voltage current: 500mA.				
÷	Ground cable.				
	485 communication port. They are used to control devices such as				
485 A/B	decoder. 120 $\Omega$ should be parallel connected between A, B lines if there				
	are too many PTZ decoders.				
	Four-wire full-duplex RS485 port.				
T+,T-,R+,R-	T+ T-: output wire.				
	R+ R-: input wire.				

Table 4-1

## 4.3.2 Alarm Input

Please refer to the following figure for more information.

- Grounding alarm inputs which includes Normal open and Normal close type.
- Please parallel connect COM end and GND end of the alarm detector (Provide external power to the alarm detector).
- Please parallel connect the Ground of the DVR and the ground of the alarm detector.
- Please connect the NC port of the alarm sensor to the DVR alarm input(ALARM)

• Use the same ground with that of DVR if you use external power to the alarm device.

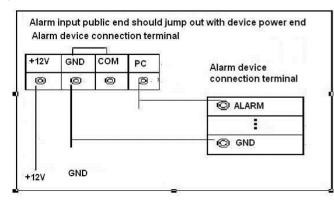


Figure 4-4

## 4.3.3 Alarm Output

- Provide external power to external alarm device.
- To avoid overloading, please read the following relay parameters table carefully.
- RS485 A/B cable is for the A/B cable of the PTZ decoder.

# 4.3.4 Alarm Output Relay Parameters

#### NOTE

Refer to the actual product for relay model information.

Model		HFD23/005-1ZS	HRB1-S-DC5V
Material of the touch		AgNi+ gold-plating	AuAg10/AgNi10/CuNi30
	Rated switch capacity	30V DC 1A/125V AC 0.5A	24V DC 1A/125V AC 2A
Rating	Maximum switch	62.5VA/30W	250VA/48W
(Resistance Load)	Maximum switch voltage	125V AC/60V DC	125V AC/60V DC
	Maximum switch currency	2A	2A
	Between touches	400VAC 1 minute	500VAC 1 minute
Insulation	Between touch and winding	1000VAC 1 minute	1000VAC 1 minute
Turn-on Time	9	5ms max	5ms max
Turn-off Time	9	5ms max	5ms max
Longevity	Mechanical	1×10 <sup>7</sup> times (300 times/MIN)	5×10 <sup>6</sup> times (300 times/MIN)
	Electrical	1×10 <sup>5</sup> times (30 times/MIN)	2.5×10 <sup>4</sup> times (30 times/MIN)
Working Temperature		-30℃—+70℃	-40°C−+70°C

# 4.4 Connecting to RS485 Port

- Step 1 Connect the RS485 cable of the PTZ camera to the RS485 port on the Device. Ensure the match of A and B interfaces.
- <u>Step 2</u> Connect the video out cable of the PTZ camera to the video input port on the Device.
- <u>Step 3</u> Turn on the PTZ camera.

# 5 Local Configurations

Please read the following notes prior to using the Device.

🛄 NOTE

- The interfaces in the Manual are used for introducing the operations and only for reference. The actual interface might be different dependent on the model you purchased. If there is inconsistency between the Manual and the actual product, the actual product shall govern.
- The Manual is a general document for introducing the product, so there might be some functions described for the Device in the Manual not apply to the model you purchased.
- Conventions for mouse operations on a menu.
  - ♦ Click: On the menu, left-click the mouse once on an option to enter the option setting.
  - Right-click: On any interface, right-click the mouse once to return to the previous level.
     For details about mouse operations, see "3.4 Mouse Operations."

# 5.1 Initial Settings

# 5.1.1 Booting up



- Ensure the input voltage corresponds to the power requirement of the Device. Power on the Device after the power cable is properly connected.
- To protect the Device, please connect the Device with the power cable first, and then connect to the power source.
- To ensure the stable work of the Device and the external devices connected to the Device and to prolong the batter life, it is recommended to refer to the national related standard to use the power source that provides stable voltage with less interference from ripples. USP power source is recommended.
- <u>Step 1</u> Connect the Device to the monitor.
- <u>Step 2</u> Plug in the power cable to the Device.
- <u>Step 3</u> Press the power button to turn on the Device. The power indicator light is on.
  - On the connected monitor, the live view screen is displayed by default. If you turn on the Device during the time period that is configured for recording, the system starts recording after it is turned on, and you will see the icon indicating recording status is working in the specific channels.

# 5.1.2 Initializing the Device

When booting up for the first time, you need to configure the password information for **admin** (by default).

NOTE

To secure the Device, it is strongly recommended for you to properly keep the password for admin and modify it regularly.

<u>Step 1</u> Turn on the Device.

The **Device Initialization** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-1.

Device Initialization				
1. Enter Password	<b>→</b>	2. Unlock Pattern	<b>→</b>	3. Password Protection
User Password	admin			vord that has 8 to 32
Confirm Password Prompt Question			letter(s), nur with at least	it can be a combination of mber(s) and symbol(s) two kinds of them not use special symbols
			like ' " ; : &)	
				Next

Figure 5-1

Step 2 Configure the password information for admin. For details, see Table 5-1.

Description			
By default, the user is <b>admin</b> .			
In the <b>Password</b> box, enter the password for admin.			
The new password can be set from 8 characters through 32			
characters and contains at least two types from number, letter and			
special characters (excluding"'", """, ";", ":" and "&").			
In the Prompt Question box, enter the information that can remind			
you of the password.			
NOTE NOTE			
On the login interface, click 📠, the prompt will display to help you			
find back the password.			

Table 5-1

Step 3 Click Next.

The unlock pattern setting interface is displayed. See Figure 5-2.

Device Initialization				
1. Enter Password		2. Unlock Pattern	<b>→</b>	3. Password Protection
	Plea	se draw the unlock pa	attern.	
		Figure 5.0	[	Back Skip

Figure 5-2

<u>Step 4</u> Draw a unlock pattern.

After the setting is completed, the password protection settings interface is displayed. See Figure 5-3.

- The pattern that you want to set must cross at least four points.
- If you do not want to configure the unlock pattern, click Skip.
- Once you have configured the unlock pattern, the system will require the unlock pattern as the default login method. If you skip this setting, enter the password for login.

Device Initialization		
1. Enter Passwo	rd → 2. Unlock Pattern → 3. Password	I Protection
Email Address Security Questions		properly or
Question 1	What is your favorite children's book?	•
Answer		
Question 2	What was the first name of your first boss?	•
Answer		
Question 3	What is the name of your favorite fruit?	•
Answer		
		Save

Figure 5-3

<u>Step 5</u> Configure the protection parameters for password. For details, see Table 5-2.
 After configuration, if you forgot the password for admin user, you can reset the password through the reserved email address or security questions. For details about resetting the password, see "0 Resetting Password."
 If you do not want to configure the settings, disable the email address and security questions functions on the interface.

Password Protection Mode	Description
Email Address	Enter the reserved email address. In the <b>Email Address</b> box, enter an email address for password reset. In case you forgot password, enter the security code that you will get from this reserved email address to reset the password of admin.
Security Questions	Configure the security questions and answers. In case you forgot password, enter the answers to the questions can make you reset the password.

If you want to configure the email or security questions fucntion later or you want to change the configurations, select **Main Menu > ACCOUNT > USER**.

Table 5-2

<u>Step 6</u> Click **Save** to complete the settings.

The End-User License Agreement interface is displayed.

- Step 7 Select the I have read and agree to all terms check box.
- Step 8 Click Next.

The **Startup Wizard** interface is displayed. For details about quick settings during startup, see "5.1.3.3 Resetting Password

# 5.1.3 Resetting Password

You can reset the password by the following methods when you forgot the password for admin account.

- If the password reset function is enabled, you can use mobile phone to scan the QR code to reset the password. For details, see "5.1.3.2 Resetting Password on Local Interface."
- If the password reset function is disabled, there are two situations:
  - If you configured security questions, you can find back the password by the security questions.
  - If you did not configure the security questions, you can only use the reset button on the mainboard to restore the Device to factory default.

Not all models are provided with reset button.

#### 5.1.3.1 Enabling Password Reset Function

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > SYSTEM > SECURITY > System Service, the System Service interface is displayed. See Figure 5-4.

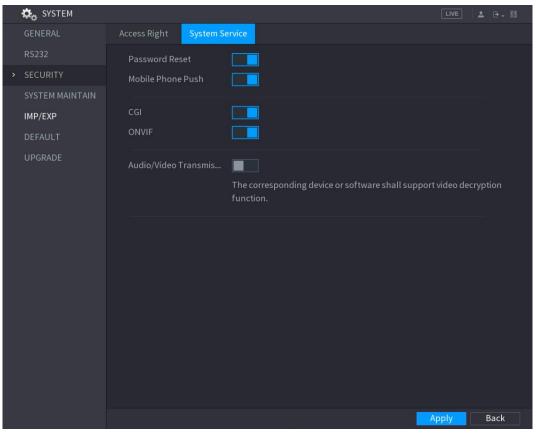


Figure 5-4

### 5.1.3.2 Resetting Password on Local Interface

<u>Step 1</u> Enter the login interface.

- If you have configured unlock pattern, the unlock pattern login interface is displayed. See Figure 5-5. Click **Forgot Pattern**, the password login interface is displayed. See Figure 5-6.
- If you did not configure unlock pattern, the password login interface is displayed. See Figure 5-6.

III NOTE

On the unlock pattern login interface, click **Switch User** to login; or on the password login interface, in the **User Name** list, select other users to login.

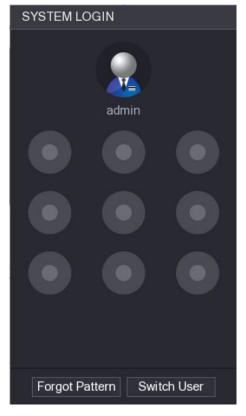


Figure 5-5

SYSTEM LOGIN				
User Name	admin			Fa
Password				P
_				
	OK	Cancel		

Figure 5-6

Step 2 Click

- If you did not set the reserved email address, the email entering interface is displayed. See Figure 5-8. Enter the email address, and then click **Next**, the **Prompt** message interface is displayed. See Figure 5-7.
- If you have set the reserved email address, the **Prompt** message interface is displayed. See Figure 5-7.

Prompt	
	In order to provide a secure password reset environment, we need to collect your e-mail address, device MAC address, device SN, etc. All collected info is used only for the purposes of verifying device validity and sending a security code to you. Do you agree and want to continue the operation?



Reset t	ne password			
	Reset Type	QR Code		
	Email Address		To reset password, please inp	ut properly or update in time
				Next Cancel

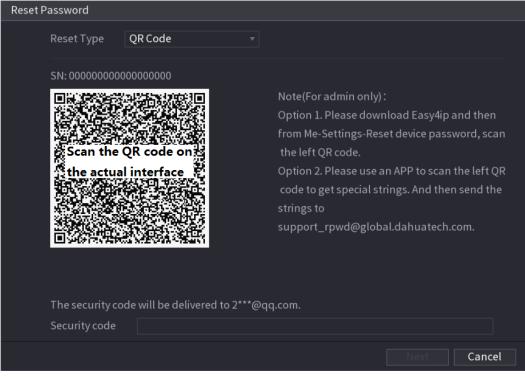
Figure 5-8

#### Step 3 Click OK.

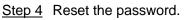
The Reset Password interface is displayed. See Figure 5-9.

NOTE

After clicking **OK**, the system will collects your information for password reset, and the information includes but not limited to email address, MAC address, and device serial number. Please read the prompt carefully before clicking **OK**.







QR code

Follow the onscreen instructions to get the security code in your reserved email address. In the **Security code** box, enter the security code.



- You can get the security code twice by scanning the same QR code. If you need to get the security code once again, please refresh the interface.
- Please use the security code received in your email box to reset the password within 24 hours; otherwise the security code becomes invalid.
- Security questions
- On the Reset the password interface as shown in Figure 5-8, in the Reset Type list, select Security Questions, the Security Questions interface is displayed, see Figure 5-10.

📖 note

If you did not configure the security questions before, in the **Reset Type** list, there will be no **Security Questions**.

2) In the **Answer** box, enter the correct answers.

Reset Password	
Reset Type	Security Questions 🔹
Question 1 Answer	
Question 2 Answer	
Question 3 Answer	
	Next Cancel

Figure 5-10

#### Step 5 Click Next.

The new password resetting interface is displayed. See Figure 5-11.

Reset Password	
Reset password of (	admin)
New Password	
	Use a password that has 8 to 32 characters, it can be a combination of letter(s), number(s) and symbol(s) with at least
	two kinds of them.(please do not use special symbol(s) with a treast
Confirm Password	
	Save Cancel

Figure 5-11

- <u>Step 6</u> In the **New Password** box, enter the new password and enter it again in the **Confirm Password** box.
- <u>Step 7</u> Click **Save**. The password resetting is started. After resetting is completed, a pop-up message is displayed.

Step 8 Click OK.

A pop-up message is displayed asking if you want to sync the password with the remote devices, see Figure 5-12.

- Click **Cancel**, the resetting is finished.
- Click **OK**, the Sync Info interface is displayed. See Figure 5-12.

Reset the password			
Reset passwor	d of (admin)		
New Password	•••••	Use a password that has	
Confirm Passv	Message	<u>aharaatara itaan ha a a</u>	mbination of mbol(s) with at
	Do you want to sync Password device connecting via the defau		
	ОК	Cancel	
			Save Cancel

Figure 5-12

#### 

This message appears only when there are digital channels instead of complete analog channels.

Sy	nc Inf	ío			
Fi	nishe	ed			
	2	Channel	IP Address	Results	
			192.168.9.1	6 Password:Succeed	
	2	10	192.168.9.5	Password:Succeed	
					•
					Finished

Figure 5-13

## 5.1.3.3 Using Reset Button on the Mainboard

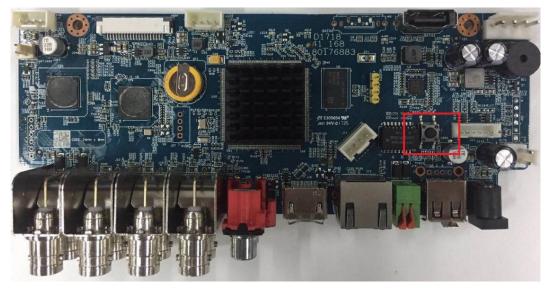
You can always use the reset button on the mainboard to reset the Device to the factory default.

NOTE

Not all models are provided with reset button.

- <u>Step 1</u> Disconnect the Device from power source, and then remove the cover panel. For details about removing the cover panel, see "2.2 Installing HDD."
- <u>Step 2</u> Find the reset button on the mainboard, and then press and hold the reset button for 5 seconds to 10 seconds. See Figure 5-14 for the location of the reset button.

Figure 5-14 Reset button



#### <u>Step 3</u> Reboot the Device.

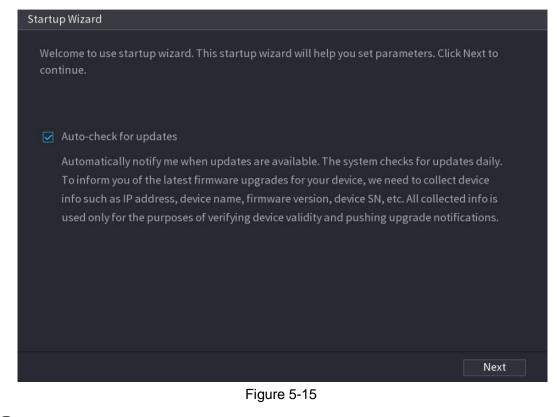
After the Device is rebooted, the settings have been restored to the factory default. You can start resetting the password.

# 5.1.4 Setting Up with the Startup Wizard

#### 5.1.4.1 Entering Startup Wizard

The Startup Wizard helps you configure the basic settings to set up the Device.

After you have initialized the Device, the **Startup Wizard** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-15.



#### NOTE

- If you select the **Auto-check for updates** check box, the system will notify you automatically when updates are available.
- After the auto-check function is enabled, to notify you to update timely, the system will collect the information such as IP address, device name, firmware version, and device serial number. The collected information is only used to verify the legality of the Device and push upgrade notices.
- If you clear the Auto-check for updates check box, the system will not perform automatic checks.

#### 5.1.4.2 Configuring General Settings

You can configure the general settings for the Device such as Device name, language, and settings for instant playback.

You can also configure general settings by selecting **Main Menu > SYSTEM > GENERAL > General**.

<u>Step 1</u> On the **Startup Wizard** interface, click **Next**.

The **General** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-16.

General			
Device Name	XVR		
Device No.	8		
Language	ENGLISH -		
Video Standard	NTSC 👻		
Instant Play(Min.)	5		
Auto Logout(Min.)	10	Monitor Channel(s) whe	en l
IPC Time Sync			
IPC Time Sync Period (hour)	24		
Navigation Bar			
Mouse Sensitivity	+	850	
		Back	Next

Figure 5-16

#### <u>Step 2</u> Configure the general settings parameters. See Table 5-3.

Parameter	Description
Device Name	In the <b>Device Name</b> box, enter the Device name.
Device No.	In the <b>Device No.</b> box, enter a number for the Device.
Language	In the Language list, select a language for the Device system.
Video Standard	In the Video Standard list, select PAL or NTSC according to your actual situation.
Instant Play (Min.)	In the <b>Instant Play</b> box, enter the time length for playing back the recoded video. The value ranges from 5 to 60. On the live view control bar, click the instant playback button to play back the recorded video within the configured time.
Auto Logout (Min.)	In the <b>Auto Logout</b> box, enter the standby time for the Device. The Device automatically logs out when it is not working for the configured time period. You need to login the Device again. The value ranges from 0 to 60. 0 indicates there is not standby time for the Device. Click <b>Monitor Channel(s) when logout</b> . You can select the channels that you want to continue monitoring when you logged out.
IPC Time Sync	Syncs the Device time with IP camera.
IPC Time Sync Period (hour)	In the IPC Time Sync Period box, enter the interval for time sync.
Navigation Bar	Enable the navigation bar. When you click on the live view screen, the navigation bar is displayed.
Mouse Sensitivity	Adjust the speed of double-click by moving the slider. The bigger the value is, the faster the double-clicking speed must be.

Table 5-3

### 5.1.4.3 Configuring Date and Time Settings

You can configure the system time, choose the time zone, set the daylight saving time, and enable the NTP server.

You can also configure date and time settings by selecting Main Menu > SYSTEM >

#### GENERAL > Date&Time.

<u>Step 1</u> After you have configured the general settings, on the **General** interface, click **Next**. The **Date&Time** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-17.

Date&Time	
System Time	2018 - 02 - 08 15 : 37 : 36
System Zone	(GMT+08:00)Beijing,Urumqi,Singapore
Date Format	YYYY MM DD 🔹
Date Separator	
Time Format	24-HOUR 🔻
DST	📕 💿 Week 🔿 Date
Start Time	Jan 🔻 1st 🔻 Su 🔻 05:00
End Time	Jan 🔻 1st 🔹 Mo 💌 00:00
NTP	
Server	time.windows.com Manual Update
Port	123
Interval(Min.)	60
	Back
	Buck

Figure 5-17

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for date and time parameters. See Table 5-4.

Parameter	Description			
	In the System Time box, enter time for the system.			
	Click the time zone list, you can select a time zone for the system, and			
	the time in adjust automatically.			
System Time				
	Do not change the system time randomly; otherwise the recorded video			
	cannot be searched. It is recommended to avoid the recoding period or			
	stop recording first before you change the system time.			
System Zone	In the <b>System Zone</b> list, select a time zone for the system.			
Date Format	In the Date Format list, select a date format for the system.			
Date Separator	In the <b>Date Separator</b> list, select a separator style for the date.			
Time Format	In the Time Format list, select 12-HOUR or 24-HOUR for the time			
	display style.			
DST	Enable the Daylight Saving Time function. Click Week or click Date.			
Start Time	Configure the start time and end time for the DST.			

Parameter	Description
End Time	
NTP	Enable the NTP function to sync the Device time with the NTP server.
Server	In the <b>Server</b> box, enter the IP address or domain name of the corresponding NTP server. Click <b>Manual Update</b> , the Device starts syncing with the server immediately.
Port	The system supports TCP protocol only and the default setting is 123.
Interval (Min.)	In the <b>Interval</b> box, enter the amount of time that you want the Device to sync time with the NTP server. The value ranges from 0 to 65535.

Table 5-4

#### 5.1.4.4 Configuring Network Settings

You can configure the basic network settings such as net mode, IP version, and IP address of the Device.

You can also configure network settings by selecting Main Menu > NETWORK > TCP/IP.

<u>Step 1</u> After you have configured the date and time settings, on the **Date&Time** interface, click **Next**.

NETWORK			
Net Mode Ethernet Card	Multi-address • Ethernet Port1 •	Ethernet Port1 IPv4	
MAC Address DHCP IP Address Subnet Mask Default Gateway DNS DHCP Preferred DNS Alternate DNS	"00:00:23:34:45:66" 192 . 168 . 20 . 13 255 . 255 . 0 . 0 192 . 168 . 0 . 1 8 . 8 . 8 . 8 8 . 8 . 4 . 4		
MTU	1500		
Test		Back	Next

The NETWORK interface is displayed. See Figure 5-18

Figure 5-18

Step 2 Configure the settings for network parameters. See Table 5-5.

Decomption	Parameter	Description
------------	-----------	-------------

Parameter	Description				
Net Mode	<ul> <li>Multi-address: Two Ethernet ports work separately through either of which you can request the Device to provide the services such as HTTP and RTSP. You need to configure a default Ethernet port (usually the Ethernet port 1 by default) to request the services from the device end such as DHCP, Email and FTP. If one of the two Ethernet ports is disconnected as detected by networking testing, the system network status is regarded as offline.</li> <li>Fault Tolerance: Two Ethernet port is working and when this port fails, the other port will start working automatically to ensure the network connection.</li> <li>When testing the network status, the network is regarded as offline only when both of the two Ethernet ports are disconnected. The two Ethernet ports are used under the same LAN.</li> <li>Load Balance: Two network status, the network is regarded as offline only when both of the two Ethernet ports are disconnected. The two Ethernet ports are used under the same LAN.</li> <li>Men testing the network status, the network is regarded as offline only when both of the two Ethernet ports are disconnected. The two Ethernet ports are used under the same LAN.</li> <li>Men testing the network status, the network is regarded as offline only when both of the two Ethernet ports are disconnected. The two Ethernet ports are used under the same LAN.</li> <li>Morte</li> <li>NOTE</li> <li>The Device with single Ethernet port does not support this function.</li> </ul>				
Default Ethernet Port	In the <b>Ethernet Card</b> list, select an Ethernet port as a default port. This setting is available only when the <b>Multi-address</b> is selected in the <b>Net Mode</b> list.				
IP Version	In the <b>IP Version</b> list, you can select <b>IPv4</b> or <b>IPv6</b> . Both versions are supported for access.				
MAC Address	Displays the MAC address of the Device.				
DHCP	<ul> <li>Enable the DHCP function. The IP address, subnet mask and default gateway are not available for configuration once DHCP is enabled.</li> <li>If DHCP is effective, the obtained information will display in the IP Address box, Subnet Mask box and Default Gateway box. If not, all values show 0.0.0.0.</li> <li>If you want manually configure the IP information, disable the DHCP function first.</li> <li>If PPPoE connection is successful, the IP address, subnet mask, default gateway, and DHCP are not available for configuration.</li> </ul>				
IP Address	Enter the IP address and configure the corresponding subnet mask and				
Subnet Mask	default gateway.				
Default Gateway	IP address and default gateway must be in the same network segment.				
DNS DHCP	Enable the DHCP function to get the DNS address from router.				
Preferred DNS	In the Preferred DNS box, enter the IP address of DNS.				

Parameter	Description				
Alternate DNS	In the Alternate DNS box, enter the IP address of alternate DNS.				
MTU	<ul> <li>In the MTU box, enter a value for network card. The value ranges from 1280 byte through 1500 byte. The default is 1500.</li> <li>The suggested MTU values are as below.</li> <li>1500: The biggest value of Ethernet information package. This value is typically selected if there is no PPPoE or VPN connection, and it is also the default value of some routers, network adapters and switches.</li> <li>1492: Optimized value for PPPoE.</li> <li>1468: Optimized value for DHCP.</li> <li>1450: Optimized value for VPN.</li> </ul>				
Test	Click <b>Test</b> to test if the entered IP address and gateway are interworking.				

Table 5-5

## 5.1.4.5 Configuring P2P Settings

You can add the Device into your cell phone client or the platform to manage.

You can also configure P2P function by selecting **Main Menu > NETWORK > P2P**.

Make sure the DVR is connected into the Internet, and if yes, in the **Status** box of the P2P interface, it shows **Online**.

<u>Step 1</u> After you have configured the network settings, on the **NETWORK** interface, click **Next**.

The **P2P** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-19.

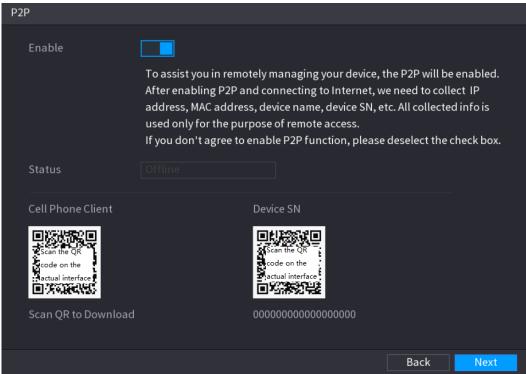


Figure 5-19

Step 2 Enable the P2P function.

#### 

After the P2P function is enabled and connected to the Internet, the system will collects your information for remote access, and the information includes but not limited to email address, MAC address, and device serial number.

You can start adding the device.

- Cell Phone Client: Use your mobile phone to scan the QR code to add the device into the Cell Phone Client, and then you can start accessing the Device.
- Platform: Obtain the Device SN by scanning the QR code. Go to the P2P management platform and add the Device SN into the platform. Then you can access and manage the device in the WAN. For details, please refer to the P2P operation manual.

#### 

You can also enter the QR code of Cell Phone Client and Device SN by clicking

on the top right of the interfaces after you have entered the Main Menu.

To use this function, take adding device into Cell Phone Client as an example.

#### Adding Device into Cell Phone Client

- <u>Step 1</u> Use your cell phone to scan the QR code under Cell Phone Client to download the application.
- Step 2 On your cell phone, open the application, and then tap

The menu is displayed. You can start adding the device.

- 1) Tap Device Manager.
  - The **Device Manager** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-20.

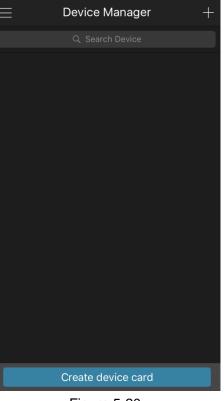


Figure 5-20

2) Tap an the top right corner.

The interface requiring device initialization is displayed. A pop-up message reminding you to make sure the Device is initialized is displayed.

- 3) Tap **OK**.
  - ◇ If the Device has not been initialized, Tap **Device Initialization** to perform initializing by following the onscreen instructions.
  - $\diamond~$  If the Device has been initialized, you can start adding it directly.
- 4) Tap Add Device.

The Add Device interface is displayed. See Figure 5-21.

#### 

You can add wireless device or wired device. The Manual takes adding wired device as an example.

<	P2P
Register Mode:	P2P
Name:	
SN:	
Username:	admin
Password:	
Live Preview:	Extra >
Playback:	Extra >
Start I	Live Preview

Figure 5-21

5) Tap **P2P**.

The **P2P** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-22.

<	P2P	
Register Mode:		P2P
Name:		
SN:		
Username:		admin
Password:		
Live Preview:		Extra >
Playback:		Extra >
Start I	Live Preview	

Figure 5-22

6) Enter a name for the DVR, the username and password, scan the QR code under **Device SN**.

#### 7) Tap Start Live Preview.

The Device is added and displayed on the live view interface of the cell phone. See Figure 5-23.



Figure 5-23

## 5.1.4.6 Configuring Encode Settings

You can configure the settings of main stream and sub stream for the Device.

The **Encode** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-24.

You can also configure encode settings by selecting **Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE > Encode**.

<u>Step 1</u> After you have configured the P2P settings, on the **P2P** interface, click **Next**.

			0		
Encode					
Cł	hannel	1 •			
М	lain Stream		Sub Stream		
Si	mart Codec		Video		
Ту	уре	General 🔹	Туре	Sub Stream1	
C	ompression	H.265 -	Compression	H.265	
R	esolution	1920x1080(1080P) -	Resolution	352x288(CIF)	
Fr	rame Rate(FPS)	25 🔹	Frame Rate(FPS)	15	
Bi	it Rate Type	CBR -	Bit Rate Type	CBR	
16	Frame Interval	1S -	l Frame Interval	1 S	
Bi	it Rate(Kb/S)	2048 -	Bit Rate(Kb/S)	320	
		More Setting		More Setting	
Def	fault Copy			Back	Next

Figure 5-24

Step 2 Configure the settings for the main/sub streams parameters. See Table 5-6.

Parameter	Description				
Channel	In the <b>Channel</b> list, select the channel that you want to configure the settings for.				
Smart Codec	Enable the smart codec function. This function can reduce the video bit stream for non-important recorded video to maximize the storage space.				
Туре	<ul> <li>Main Stream: In the Type list, select General, MD (Motion Detect), or Alarm.</li> <li>Sub Stream: This setting is not configurable.</li> </ul>				
Compression	<ul> <li>In the Compression list, select the encode mode.</li> <li>H.265: Main profile encoding. This setting is recommended.</li> <li>H.264H: High profile encoding. Low bit stream with high definition.</li> <li>H.264: Main profile encoding.</li> <li>H.264B: Baseline profile encoding. This setting requires higher bit stream compared with other settings for the same definition.</li> </ul>				
Resolution	In the Resolution list, select resolution for the video. The maximum video resolution might be different dependent on your device model.				

Description
Configure the frames per second for the video. The higher the value,
the clearer and smoother the image will become. Frame rate changes
along with the resolution.
Generally, in PAL format, you can select the value from 1 through 25;
in NTSC format, you can select the value from 1 through 30. However,
the actual range of frame rate that you can select depends on the
capability of the Device.
In the Bit Rate Type list, select CBR (Constant Bit Rate) or VBR
(Variable Bit Rate). If you select CBR, the image quality cannot be
configured; if you select VBR, the image quality can be configured.
This function is available if you select <b>VBR</b> in the <b>Bit Rate</b> List.
The bigger the value is, the better the image will become.
The interval between two reference frames.
In the Bit Rate list, select a value or enter a customized value to
change the image quality. The bigger the value is, the better the
image will become.
Enable the function for sub stream.
Click More Setting, the More Setting interface is displayed.
Audio Encode: This function is enabled by default for main
stream. You need to manually enable it for sub stream 1. Once
this function is enabled, the recorded video file is composite
audio and video stream.
• Audio Source: In the Audio Source list, you can select LOCAL
and HDCVI.
$\diamond$ LOCAL: The audio signal is input from Audio In port.
$\diamond$ HDCVI: The audio signal is input from HDCVI camera.
• Audio Format: In the <b>Audio Forma</b> t list, select a format that you
need.

Table 5-6

## 5.1.4.7 Configuring Snapshot Settings

You can configure the basic snapshot settings such as quantity of snapshot each time, channel(s) to take snapshot, and image size and quality of snapshot.

You can also configure general settings by selecting **Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE > Snapshot**.

For more information about snapshot settings, see "5.8 Configuring Snapshot Settings." <u>Step 1</u> After you have configured the encode settings, on the **Encode** interface, click **Next**.

The **SNAPSHOT** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-25.

SNAPSHOT				
Manual Snap	1	/Time		
Channel	1 -			
Mode	General			
Image Size	352x288(CIF)			
Image Quality	4			
Interval	1 Second -			
Default Cop	y		Back	Next

Figure 5-25

Step 2 Configure the settings for the snapshot parameters. See Table 5-7.

Description
In the Manual Snap list, select how many snapshots you want to take
each time.
In the Channel list, select the channel that you want to configure the
settings for.
In the <b>Mode</b> list, select type of snapshots.
In the Image Size list, select a value for the image.
Configure the image quality by 6 levels. The higher the level, the
better the image will become.
Configure or customize the snapshot frequency.

Table 5-7

#### 5.1.4.8 Configuring Basic Storage Settings

You can configure the settings for the situations when HDD is full, file length and time length of recorded video, and the settings if to auto-delete the old files.

You can also configure basic storage settings by selecting Main Menu > STORAGE > BASIC. Step 1 After you have configured the encode settings, on the SNAPSHOT interface, click

Next.

The **BASIC** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-26.

BASIC				
HDD Full	Overwrite -			
Pack Mode	Time Length 🔹	60	Min.	
Auto-Delete Old Files	Never			
			Back	Next

Figure 5-26

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the basic storage settings parameters. See Table 5-8.

Parameter	Description
HDD Full	<ul> <li>Configure the settings for the situation when all the read/write discs are full, and there is no more free disc.</li> <li>Select Stop Record to stop recording</li> <li>Select Overwrite to overwrite the recorded video files always from the earliest time.</li> </ul>
Pack Mode	Configure the time length and file length for each recorded video.
Auto-Delete Old Files	Configure whether to delete the old files and if yes, in the <b>Auto-Delete</b> <b>Old Files</b> list, select <b>Customized</b> to configure the time length for how long you want to keep the old files.

Table 5-8

## 5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule

You can configure the schedule for the recorded video such as channels to record, alarm settings, and the armed period.

You can also configure recorded video storage settings by selecting **Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Record**.

<u>Step 1</u> After you have configured the basic storage settings, on the **BASIC** interface, click **Next**.

The **Record** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-27.

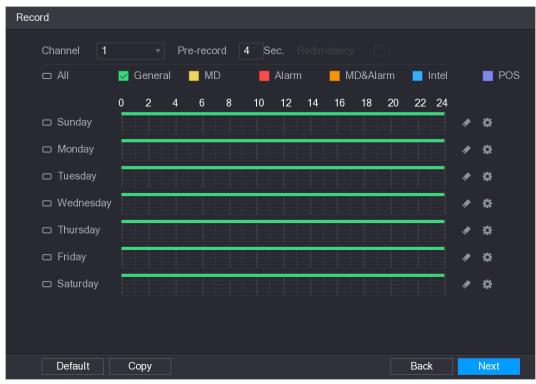


Figure 5-27

Step 2 Configure the record settings parameters. See Table 5-9.

Parameter	Description		
Channel	In the <b>Channel</b> list, select a channel to record the video.		
Pre-record	In the <b>Pre-record</b> list, enter the amount of time that you want to start		
Pre-record	the recording in advance.		
	If there are several HDDs installed to the Device, you can set one of		
	the HDDs as the redundant HDD to save the recorded files into		
	different HDDs. In case one of the HDDs is damaged, you can find the		
	backup in the other HDD.		
	• Select Main Menu > STORAGE > HDD MANAGER, and then		
	set a HDD as redundant HDD.		
	• Select Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDUE > Record, and		
	then select the <b>Redundancy</b> check box.		
Redundancy	$\diamond$ If the selected channel is not recording, the redundancy		
Redundancy	function takes effect next time you record no matter you		
	select the check box or not.		
	$\diamond$ If the selected channel is recording, the current recorded		
	files will be packed, and then start recording according to the		
	new schedule.		
	NOTE NOTE		
	<ul> <li>Not all models support this function.</li> </ul>		
	<ul> <li>The redundant HDD only back up the recorded videos but not</li> </ul>		
	snapshots.		
Event type	Select the check box of the event type which includes General, MD		
	(motion detect, video loss, tempering, diagnosis), <b>Alarm</b> (IoT alarms,		
	local alarms, alarms from alarm box, IPC external alarms, IPC Offline		
	alarms), <b>MD&amp;Alarm</b> , <b>Intel</b> (IVS events, face detection), and <b>POS</b> .		

Parameter	Description			
	Define a period during which the configured recording setting is			
Period	active.			
	The system only activates the alarm in the defined period.			
Сору	Click <b>Copy</b> to copy the settings to other channels.			
Table 5-9				

- <u>Step 3</u> Define the video recording period by drawing or editing. By default, it is active all the time.
  - Define the period by drawing.
  - 1) Select the check box of event type. See Figure 5-28.



- 2) Define a period. The system supports maximum six periods.

icon switches to 📟. You can define the period for the selected days

simultaneously.

3) On the timeline, drag to define a period. The Device starts recoding the selected event type in the defined period. See Figure 5-29.



Figure 5-29

 Recording priority in case of event types are overlapped: MD&Alarm > Alarm > Intel > MD > General.

- Select the check box of event type, and then click it to clear the defined period.
- When selecting MD&Alarm, the respective check box of MD and Alarm will be cleared.
- Define the period by editing. Take Sunday as an example.
- 1) Click 🗰.

The **Period** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-30.

Period					-				
Current Dat	e: Sunda	ау							
Period 1	00:00	- 24:00	🗸 General	MD	🗌 Alarm	MD&Alarm	Intel	POS	
Period 2	00:00	- 24:00	General	D MD	🗌 Alarm	MD&Alarm	Intel	POS	
Period 3	00:00	- 24:00	General	D MD	🗌 Alarm	MD&Alarm	🗌 Intel	POS	
Period 4	00:00	- 24:00	General	D MD	🗌 Alarm	MD&Alarm	🗌 Intel	POS	
Period 5	00:00	- 24:00	General	D MD	🗌 Alarm	MD&Alarm	🗌 Intel		
Period 6	00:00	- 24:00	General	MD	Alarm	MD&Alarm	🗌 Intel	POS	
Сору									
🗌 All									
🖂 Sunday		Monday	Tuesday	Wednesda	y 🗌 Thurso	lay 🗌 Friday	🗌 Sat	turday	
								Apply	Cancel

Figure 5-30

- 2) Enter the time frame for the period and select the event check box.
  - $\diamond$  There are six periods for you to set for each day.
  - ♦ Under Copy, select All to apply the settings to all the days of a week, or select specific day(s) that you want to apply the settings to.
- 3) Click **Apply** to save the settings.
- <u>Step 4</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

  - Click **Copy** to copy the settings to other channels.
  - After configuring the recording schedule settings, you need to perform the following operations to start recording according to the defined schedule.
    - Enable the alarm event and cofigure the settings for the recording channel.
       For details, see "5.10 Alarm Events Settings."
    - You need to enable the recording function, see "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."

### 5.1.4.10 Configuring Snapshot Storage Schedule

You can configure the storage schedule for the snapshot such as channels to take snapshot, alarm settings, and the armed period.

You can also configure snapshot storage settings by selecting **Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot**.

<u>Step 1</u> After you have configured the video recording settings, on the **Record** interface, click **Next**.

Snapshot Channel 🛃 General Alarm MD MD&Alarm Intel 2 22 24 6 10 12 16 18 20 0 8 Sunday \$ Monday Tuesday Wednesday ۵ ۵ Saturday ä Default Сору Back Finished

The **SNAPSHOT** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-31.

Figure 5-31

#### Step 2 Configure the snapshot settings parameters. See Table 5-10.

Description		
In the <b>Channel</b> list, select a channel to take a snapshot.		
Select the check box of the event type which includes General, MD,		
Alarm, MD&Alarm, Intel, and POS.		
Define a period during which the configured snapshot setting is active.		
For details about defining a period, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded		
Video Storage Schedule."		
Click <b>Copy</b> to copy the settings to other channels.		

Table 5-10

#### Step 3 Click Finished.

A pop-up message is displayed.

#### Step 4 Click OK.

The live view screen is displayed. The setting up with startup wizard is completed. You can start using the Device.

# 5.2 Live View

After you logged in the Device, the live view is displayed. See Figure 5-32. The number of channels displayed depends on your model.

To enter the live view screen from other interfaces, click used on the top right of the screen.



Figure 5-32

## 5.2.1 Live View Screen

You can view the live video from the connected cameras through each channel on the screen.

- By default, the system time, channel name and channel number are displayed on each channel window. This setting can be configured by selecting Main Menu > CAMERA > OVERLAY.
- The figure in the bottom right corner represents channel number. If the channel position is changed or the channel name is modified, you can recognize the channel number by this figure and then perform the operations such as record query and playback.

For the icons displayed on each channel, see Table 5-11.

lcon	Function
	Indicates recording status. This icon displays when the video is being recorded.
*	This icon displays when the motion detection occurs in the scene.
?	This icon displays when the video loss is detected.
	This icon displays when the channel monitoring is locked.
	<b>—</b> • • • <b>—</b> • • •

Table 5-11

### 

To switch the position of two channels, point to one of the two channels, and then drag the window to the other channel.

# 5.2.2 Live View Control bar

The live view control bar provides you access to perform the operations such as playback, zoom, real-time backup, manual snapshot, voice talk, adding remote devices, and streams switch.

When you move the pointer to the top middle position of a channel window, the live view control bar is displayed. See Figure 5-33 for analog channel and Figure 5-34 for digital channel.

If there is not operation for six seconds after the control bar is displayed, the control bar hides automatically.



Figure 5-33



Figure 5-34

No.	Function	No.	Function	No.	Function
1	Instant Play	4	Manual Snap	7	Siren
2	Digital Zoom	5	Mute	8	Audio Talk
3	Real-time Backup	6	White Light	9	Camera Registration

Table 5-12

### 5.2.2.1 Instant Playback

You can play back the previous five minutes to sixty minutes of the recorded video.

By clicking **I**, the instant playback interface is displayed. The instant playback has the following features:

- Move the slider to choose the time you want to start playing.
- Play, pause and close playback.
- The information such as channel name and recording status icon are shielded during instant playback and will not display until exited.
- During playback, screen split layout switch is not allowed.
- To change the playback time, select **Main Menu > SYSTEM > GENERAL**, in the **Instant Play** box, enter the time you want to play back. See Figure 5-35.

🔅 SYSTEM				
> GENERAL	General	Date&Time	Holiday	
RS232	Device Name		XVR	
SECURITY	Device No.		8	
SYSTEM MAINTAIN	Language		ENGLISH	
IMP/EXP	Video Standa	ırd	PAL	
DEFAULT	Instant Play(	Min.)	5	
UPGRADE	Auto Logout(	Min.)	2	Monitor Channel(s) when logout
	IPC Time Syr	าด		
	IPC Time Syr	nc Period (hour)	24	
	Navigation B	ar		
	Mouse Sensi	tivity		<b>──</b> ● <b>+</b> 850
				Apply Back

Figure 5-35

## 5.2.2.2 Digital Zoom

You can enlarge a specific area of the image to view the details by either of the following two ways.

• Click 🖭, the icon switches to 🔍. Hold down the left mouse button to select the area

you want to enlarge. The area is enlarged after the left mouse button is released.

• Point to the center that you want to enlarge, rotate the wheel button to enlarge the area.

III NOTE

- For some models, when the image is enlarged in the first way described previously, the selected area is zoomed proportionally according to the window.
- When the image is in the enlarged status, you can drag the image toward any direction to view the other enlarged areas.
- Right-click on the enlarged image to return the original status.

### 5.2.2.3 Real-time Backup

You can record the video of any channel and save the clip into a USB storage device.

By clicking *w*, the recording is started. To stop recording, click this icon again. The clip is automatically saved into the connected USB storage device.

### 5.2.2.4 Manual Snapshot

You can take one to five snapshots of the video and save into a USB storage device.

By clicking 1, you can take snapshots. The snapshots are automatically saved into the

connected USB storage device. You can view the snapshots on your PC.

To change the quantity of snapshots, select **Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE > Snapshot**, in the **Manual Snap** list, select the snapshot quantity.

### 5.2.2.5 Mute (Analog channel only)

You can mute the video sound by clicking . This function is supported in single-channel view.

### 5.2.2.6 White Light (Supported on camera with white light function)

Click I to manually control the camera to turn on the white light function.

## 5.2.2.7 Siren (Supported on camera with siren function)

to manually control the camera to generate alarm sound.

### 5.2.2.8 Bidirectional Talk (Digital channel only)

You can perform the voice interaction between the Device and the remote device to improve efficiency of emergency. This function is supported only when the remotely connected IPC device supports bidirectional talk.

- Click , the icon switches to , the bidirectional talk of the remote device is turned on. The bidirectional talk of other digital channels is disabled.
- Click We to cancel the bidirectional talk. The bidirectional talk of other digital channels is resumed.

### 5.2.2.9 Remote Devices (Digital channel only)

You can view the information of remote devices and add new remote devices to replace the current connected devices.

By clicking E, the Camera Registration interface is displayed. For details about adding the remote devices, see "5.6 Configuring Remote Devices."

## 5.2.3 Navigation Bar

You can access the functions to perform operations through the function icons on the navigation bar. For example, you can access Main Menu and switch window split mode. See Figure 5-36.

The navigation bar is disabled by default. It does not appear in the live view screen until it is enabled. To enable it, select **Main Menu > SYSTEM > GENERAL**, enable the Navigation Bar, and then click Apply.



Figure 5-36

Icon	Function
	Open Main Menu.
4	Expand or condense the navigation bar.
	Select view layout.

lcon	Function				
<b>€</b> ∃	Go to the previous screen.				
Ð	Go to the next screen.				
t]	Enable tour function. The icon switches to				
-	Open the PTZ control panel. For details, see "5.4 Controlling PTZ Cameras."				
8	Open the <b>Color Setting</b> interface. For details, see "5.2.5 Color Setting." NOTE				
	This function is supported only in single-channel layout.				
Q	Open the record search interface. For detail, see "5.9 Playing Back Video."				
Q A	Open the <b>EVENT</b> interface to view the device alarm status. For details, see "5.21.3 Viewing Event Information."				
<b>57'</b>	Open the <b>CHANNEL INFO</b> interface to display the information of each channel.				
<b>97</b> 4	Open the <b>CAMERA REGISTRATION</b> interface. For details, see "5.6.1 Adding Remote Devices."				
	Open the <b>NETWORK</b> interface. For details, see "5.16.1 Configuring Network Settings."				
	Open the <b>HDD MANAGER</b> interface. For details, see "5.19.3 Configuring HDD Manager."				
	Open the <b>USB MANAGER</b> interface. For details about USB operations, see "5.15.2 Backing up Files", "5.21.2 Viewing Log Information", "5.20.4 Exporting and Importing System Settings", "5.20.6 Upgrading the Device."				

## 5.2.4 Shortcut Menu

You can quickly access some function interfaces such as main menu, record search, PTZ setting, color setting and select the view split mode.

Right-click on the live view screen, the shortcut menu is displayed. See Figure 5-37. For details about the functions of shortcut menu, see Table 5-14.

After you access any interface through shortcut menu, you can return to the previous screen by right-clicking on the current screen.

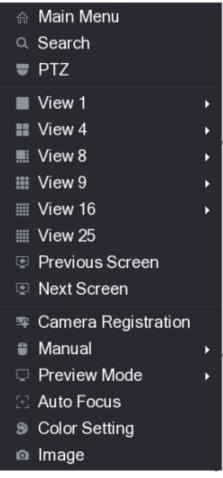


Figure 5-37

Function	Description			
Main Menu	Open Main Menu interface.			
Search	Open the <b>PLAYBACK</b> interface where you can search and play			
Search	back record files.			
PTZ	Open the <b>PTZ</b> interface.			
View Loveut	Configure the live view screen as a single-channel layout or			
View Layout	multi-channel layout.			
Previous Screen	Click Previous Screen to go to the previous screen. For example, if			
Next Screen	you are using 4-split mode, the first screen is displaying the			
Next Screen	channel 1-4, click <b>Next screen</b> , you can view channel 5-8.			
	Open the CAMERA REGISTRATION interface. For details, see			
Camera Registration	"5.6 Configuring Remote Devices			
	Adding Remote Devices."			
	• Select <b>Record</b> , you can configure the recording mode as			
Manual	Auto or Manual, or stop the recording. You can also enable or			
Manual	disable snapshot function			
	• Select Alarm Out, you can configure alarm output settings.			
	• Select General, the layout of live view screen is as default.			
Preview Mode	• Select Show Face List, the detected face snapshots are			
	displayed in the bottom of the live view screen.			

Function	Description			
	Point to the channel window and right-click on it to open the			
Auto Focus	shortcut menu, and then click Auto Focus.			
	D NOTE			
	Not all cameras support this function.			
Color Sotting	Open the COLOR interface where you can adjust the video image			
Color Setting	color.			
Image	Click to modify the camera properties.			

## 5.2.5 Color Setting

You can adjust the video image color effect such as sharpness, brightness, and contrast. The parameters are different according to the connected camera type. Take analog channel as an example.

In the live view screen, right-click on the analog channel to see the shortcut menu, and then select **Color Setting**, the **COLOR** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-38.

For details, see "5.5.1 Configuring Image Settings."

COLOR		
Period	Period 1	
Effective Time	00:00 - 24:00	
Saturation	•+	50
Brightness	•+	50
Contrast	•+	50
Hue	•+	50
Sharpness	• +	• 1
Color Mode	Standard	
EQ	-•+	• 0 එ 🖬
Position	•+	16
Customized	efault Apply	Back

Figure 5-38

Parameter	Description		
Period	Divide 24 hours into two periods and configure the corresponding color settings.		
	5		
Effective Time	Enable the function and then set the effective time for each period.		

Parameter	Description		
	Adjust the sharpness of image edge. The bigger the value is, the		
Sharpness	more obvious the image edge, and the noise is also greater.		
	The value ranges from 1 to 15. The default value is 1.		
Hue	Adjust the hue of image. The value ranges from 0 to 100. The		
	default value is 50.		
	Adjust the image brightness. The value ranges from 0 to 100. The		
	default value is 50.		
	The bigger the value is, the brighter the image will become. You		
Brightness	can adjust this value when the image as a whole looks dark or		
	bright. However, the image is likely to become dim if the value is		
	too big.		
	The recommended range is between 40 and 60.		
	Adjust the image contrast. The bigger the value is, the more		
	obvious the contrast between the light area and dark area will		
	become. You can adjust this value when the contrast is not		
Contrast	obvious. However, if the value is too big, the dark area is likely to		
	become darker and the light area over exposed. If the value is too		
	small, the image is likely to become dim.		
	The value ranges from 0 to 100. The default value is 50. The		
	recommended range is between 40 and 60.		
Saturation	Adjust the color shades. The bigger the value, the lighter the color		
	will become. This value does not influence the general image		
	lightness.		
	The value ranges from 0 to 100. The default value is 50. The		
	recommended range is between 40 and 60.		
	In the <b>Color Mode</b> list, you can select <b>Standard</b> , <b>Soft</b> , <b>Bright</b> ,		
O al a a Ma da	Colorful, Bank, Customized 1, Customized 2, Customized 3,		
Color Mode	and <b>Customized 4</b> .		
	The sharpness, hue, brightness, contrast and saturation will adjust		
	automatically according to the selected color mode.		
	Enhance the image effect. Adjust the effect value.		
EQ	Click , image is adjusted to the optimized effect		
	automatically.		
	Click      the current effect setting will be locked.		
	NOTE NOTE		
	Only HD analog channel supports this function.		
	Adjust the display position of the image in the channel window. The		
Desitie	value indicates pixel. The default value is 16.		
Position	NOTE		
	This function is only supported by analog channel.		

Parameter	Description		
	You can customize four color modes.		
	1. Click Customized. The Customized Color interface is		
	displayed.		
	2. In the <b>Color Mode</b> list, select <b>Customized 1</b> , for example.		
Customized	Then configure the settings for sharpness, hue, brightness,		
	contrast and saturation. If you select All, the configuration will		
	applies to all four customized color modes.		
	3. Click <b>OK</b> .		
	4. On the COLOR interface, in the Color Mode list, you can		
	select the customized color mode.		

# 5.2.6 Live View Display

## 5.2.6.1 Configuring Display Settings

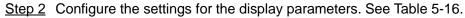
You can configure the display effect such as displaying time title and channel title, adjusting image transparency, and selecting the resolution.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > DISPLAY > Display.

The **DISPLAY** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-39.

🛄 DISPLAY				LIVE 💄 💽 🚽 🚟
> DISPLAY	Main Screen		Extra Screen	
VIEW	Main Screen		Extra Screen	
TOUR	Out Port	VGA/HDMI 1/Video out	Enable	
ZERO-CHANNEL		Time Title	Out Port HDMI2	
TV ADJUST		Channel Title	Resolution 1280x72	
		Original Rate		
		IVS Rule Preview		
	Transparency	- 0	+ 0%	
	Resolution	1280x1024		
	Preview Mode	Show Face List		
				Apply Back

Figure 5-39



	Parameter	Description
--	-----------	-------------

Paramete	er	Description			
	Out Port	Indicates the main screen port.			
		Select the Time Title check box, the current system time			
	Time Title	displays in each channel window in live view screen. To hide			
		the time, clear the check box.			
		Select the Channel Title check box, the channel name,			
	Channel Title	channel number and recording status display in each channel			
		window in live view screen. To hide the time, clear the check			
		box.			
	Original Rate	Select the <b>Original Rate</b> check box, the video image displays			
		in its actual size in the channel window.			
	IVS Rule	Select the IVS Rule Preview check box to enable IVS rule			
	Preview	preview function.			
Main		Configure the transparency of the graphical user interface			
Screen	Transparency	(GUI). The higher the value, the more transparent the GUI			
Coroon		becomes.			
		Select resolution for the video. The default resolution for VGA			
		port and HDMI port is 1280×1024.			
	Resolution	NOTE NOTE			
		Some of the resolution options might not be supported on the			
		HDMI port.			
		General: No information is displayed on the channel			
		window.			
		Show Face List: Displays the detected face snapshots			
	Preview Mode	taken as a result of face detection on the bottom of the			
		live view screen.			
		NOTE NOTE			
		Not all models support this function.			
		Enable extra screen function. After this function is enabled,			
	Enable	you can select which port as extra screen port, and the other			
		port automatically becomes the main screen port.			
Extra Screen		Select the VGA port or HDMI port as the port connected by a			
	Out Port	secondary monitor. For example, if you select HDMI port as			
		the extra screen port, the VGA port automatically becomes			
		the main screen port.			
	Resolution	Select resolution for the video. The default resolution for VGA			
		port and HDMI port is 1280×720.			
		NOTE NOTE			
		Some of the resolution options might not be supported on the			
HDMI port.					
		not display on the extra screen.			
-		ne extra screen function, both the VGA port and HDMI port			
displa	display the same image.				

## 5.2.6.2 Configuring Viewing Layout

You can configure the view layout in the live view screen.

### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > DISPLAY > VIEW.

The View Setting interface is displayed. See Figure 5-40.

📃 DISPLAY				LIVE 💄 🕞 🗸 🛱
DISPLAY	View Setting			
> VIEW				
TOUR				
ZERO-CHANNEL	1 -	2 🔻	3 -	4 -
TV ADJUST				
	5 🔻	6 🔻	7 🔻	8 -
	9 -	10 -	11 -	12 👻
	13 🔻	14 -	15 👻	16 -
	<b>11 11 11 12</b> 5			
				Apply Back

Figure 5-40

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the view layout by clicking the layout buttons on the bottom. See Figure 5-41.



Figure 5-41

For example, click and select **9-16**, the view layout changes immediately, see Figure 5-42.

	💻 DISPLAY				
	DISPLAY	View Setting			
>	VIEW				
	TOUR				
	ZERO-CHANNEL				10 💌
	TV ADJUST				
			9 👻		11 *
					12 🔻
		16 🔻	15 -	14 💌	13 -
		<b>11 11 111 125</b>			
					Apply
					Apply Back



<u>Step 3</u> Adjust the position of channels if needed.

In the channel list, for example, in the channel 9 list, you can select 10, and then the channel 9 and channel 10 exchange positions.

<u>Step 4</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings. The live view screen displays the same layout as configured in this section.

### 5.2.6.3 Configuring Zero-Channel Settings

You can view several video sources on one channel on the web end.

Step 1 Select Main Menu > DISPLAY > ZERO-CHANNEL.

The **ZERO-CHANNEL** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-43.

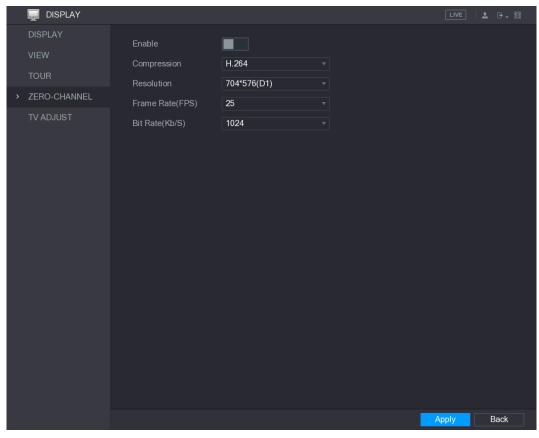


Figure 5-43

Step 2 Configure the settings for the zero-channel parameters. See Table 5-17.

Description		
Enable zero-channel function.		
In the Compression list, select the video compression standard		
according to the device capability. The default is H.265.		
In the Resolution list, select the video resolution. The default is		
704×576 (D1).		
Select a value between 1 and 25 for PAL standard, and between 1		
and 30 for NTSC standard. The actual arrange is decided and		
selected dependent on the Device capability.		
The default value is 1024Kb/S. The actual arrange is decided and		
selected dependent on the Device capability and frame rate.		

Table 5-17

Step 3 Click Apply to save the settings.

## 5.2.6.4 Configuring TV



Not all models support this function.

You can adjust the border margins in top, bottom, left and right directions as well as the brightness of the monitor connected to the Video out port of the Device.

Step 1 Select Main Menu > DISPLAY > TV ADJUST.

The TV ADJUST interface is displayed. See Figure 5-44.

📃 DISPLAY				
DISPLAY VIEW TOUR ZERO-CHANNEL	Top Margin Bottom Margin Left Margin	-0 -0 -0		
> TV ADJUST	Right Margin Brightness	-0	+ 0 + 128	
	Default			Apply Back

Figure 5-44

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the parameters according to your actual situation.

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

# 5.2.7 Configuring Tour Settings

You can configure a tour of selected channels to repeat playing videos. The videos display in turn according to the channel group configured in tour settings. The system is playing one channel group for a certain period and then automatically changes to the next channel group. <u>Step 1</u> Select **Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR**.

The **TOUR** interface is displayed. There are Main Screen tab and Extra Screen tab, see Figure 5-45 and Figure 5-46.

DISPLAY Main Screen   VIEW Enable   Enable Interval(Sec.)   ZERO-CHANNEL Video Detect   TV ADJUST Alarm   View 1 View 1   Interval(Sec.) Image: Streen   TV ADJUST Alarm   Image: Streen View 1   Image: Streen View 1   Image: Streen Image: Streen   Image: Streen View 1   Image: Streen View 1   Image: Streen Image: Streen   Image: Streen View 1   Image: Streen Image: Streen   Image: Streen Image:	
Enable     Interval(Sec.)       ZERO-CHANNEL     Video Detect       TV ADJUST     Alarm       View 1       Window Split       16       2       2       2	
> TOUR     Interval(Sec.)       ZERO-CHANNEL     Video Detect       TV ADJUST     Alarm       Window Split     View 1       16     ✓       1     ✓       2     ✓	
ZERO-CHANNEL     Video Detect     View 1       TV ADJUST     Alarm     View 1       Window Split     View 1     •       16     Channel Group     •       1     1     •       2     2     •	
Window Split  View 1    16  ✓    1    2    2	
16     ✓     Channel Group       1     ✓       2     ✓	
16     ✓     Channel Group       1     ✓       2     ✓	
1 √ 1 2 √ 2	
2 🗸 2	
10 🗸 10	
11 ⊽11	
Add Modify Delete Move up Move down	
Apply Back	

Figure 5-45

📮 DISPLAY		LIVE 🛛 🕹 💽 😤
DISPLAY	Main Screen	Extra Screen
VIEW	Enable	
> TOUR	Interval(Sec.)	5
ZERO-CHANNEL	Window Split	View 1
TV ADJUST	10 🗸	Channel Group
	1 1	
	2 🗸 2	
	10 J 10	
	Add	Modify Delete Move up Move down
		Apply Back
		Apply Back

Figure 5-46

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the tour parameters for both Main Screen and Extra Screen. See Table 5-18.

Parameter	Description		
Enable	Enable tour function.		
Interval (Sec.)	Enter the amount of time that you want each channel group displays on the screen. The value ranges from 5 seconds to 120 seconds, and		
	the default value is 5 seconds.		
Video Detect, Alarm	Select the View 1 or View 8 for <b>Motion Detect</b> tour and <b>Alarm</b> Tour (system alarm events).		
Window Split	In the <b>Window Split</b> list, select <b>View 1</b> , <b>View 4</b> , <b>View 8</b> , or other modes that are supported by the Device.		
Channel Group	<ul> <li>Display all channel groups under the current Window Split setting.</li> <li>Add a channel group: Click Add, in the pop-up Add Group channel, select the channels to form a group, and then click Save.</li> <li>Delete a channel group: Select the check box of any channel group, and then click Delete.</li> <li>Edit a channel group: Select the check box of any channel group and then click Modify, or double-click on the group. The Modify Channel Group dialog box is displayed. You can regroup the channels.</li> <li>Click Move up or Move down to adjust the position of channel group.</li> </ul>		

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to save the settings.

- On the top right of the live view screen, use the left mouse button or press Shift to switch between (image switching is allowed) and (image switching is not allowed) to turn on/off the tour function.
- On the navigation bar, click Level to enable the tour and click Level to disable it.

### Adding a Channel Group

Step 1 Click Add.

The Add Group interface is displayed. See Figure 5-47.

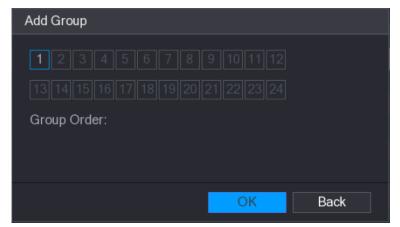


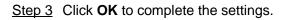
Figure 5-47

<u>Step 2</u> Select the channels that you want to group for tour. See Figure 5-48.

If you want to select more than one channel, in the **Window Split** list, do not select **View 1**.

Add Group		
1 2 3 4 <b>5 6</b> 13 14 15 16 17 18		
Group Order: 5,6,7,8		
	OK	Back

Figure 5-48



#### Modifying a Channel Group

Double-click on a channel group, the **Modify Channel Group** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-49.

You can modify channel group and click **OK** to complete the settings.

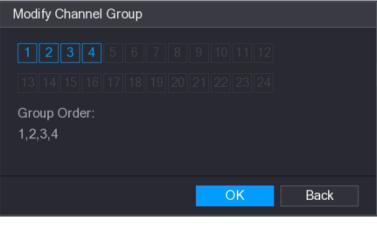


Figure 5-49

# 5.3 Entering Main Menu

Right-click on the live view screen, the shortcut menu is displayed, Click Main Menu and then login the system. The Main Menu is displayed, see Figure 5-50.

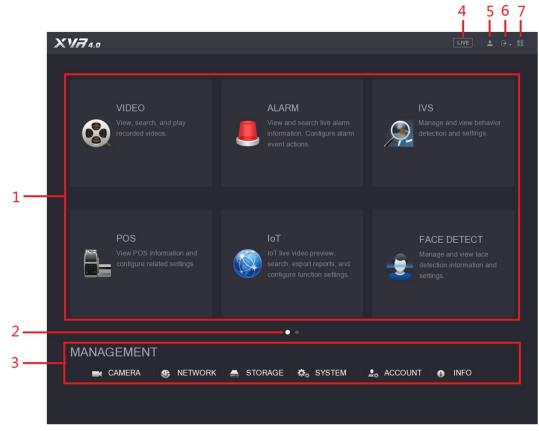


Figure 5-50

No.	lcon	Description		
1	Function tiles	<ul> <li>Includes eight function tiles: VIDEO, ALARM, IVS, POS, IoT, AI, BACKUP, DISPLAY, and AUDIO. Click each tile to open the configuration interface of the tile.</li> <li>VIDEO: Search for and play back the recorded video saved on the Device.</li> <li>ALARM: Search for alarm information and configure alarm event actions.</li> <li>IVS: Configure the behavior detections by drawing rules for detecting tripwire, intrusion, abandoned objects, and missing objects.</li> <li>POS: You can connect the Device to the POS (Point of Sale) machine and receive the information from it.</li> <li>FACE DETECT: Configure the human faces detection settings and search detected human faces.</li> <li>IoT: View, search and export the temperature and humidity data of camera, connect sensors and wireless siren, and configure the alarm event linkage settings.</li> <li>BACKUP: Search and back up the video files to the external storage device such as USB storage device.</li> <li>DISPLAY: Configure the display effect such as displaying content, image transparency, and resolution, and enable the zero-channel function.</li> <li>AUDIO: Manage audio files and configure the playing schedule. The audio file can be played in response to an alarm event if the voice prompts function is enabled.</li> </ul>		
2	Switch icon	indicates the current page of main menu. Click to switch to the next page.		
3	Configura tion menu	Includes six configurations through which you can configure camera settings, network settings, storage settings, system settings, account settings, and view information.		
4	Live	Click to go to the live view screen.		
5	<b>.</b>	When you point to A the current user account is displayed.		
6	₽.	Click , select Logout, Reboot, or Shutdown according to your actual situation.		

No.	lcon	Description
7		<ul> <li>Displays Cell Phone Client and Device SN QR Code.</li> <li>Cell Phone Client: Use your mobile phone to scan the QR code to add the device into the Cell Phone Client, and then you can start accessing the Device from your cell phone.</li> <li>Device SN: Obtain the Device SN by scanning the QR code. Go to the P2P management platform and add the Device SN into the platform. Then you can access and manage the device in the WAN. For details, please refer to the P2P operation manual. You can also configure P2P function in the local configurations. See "5.1.4.5 Configuring P2P Settings."</li> </ul>

# 5.4 Controlling PTZ Cameras

PTZ is a mechanical platform that carries a camera and a protective cover and performs overall control remotely. A PTZ can move in both horizontal and vertical direction to provide all-around view to the camera.

Before operating PTZ, please assure the network connection between PTZ and the Device.

# 5.4.1 Configuring PTZ Connection Settings

You need to configure the PTZ connection settings before use.

- Local connection: RS485 Port for connecting Speed Dome or coaxial cable for connecting coaxial camera.
- Remote connection: local area network.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > CAMERA > PTZ.

The PTZ interface is displayed. See Figure 5-51.

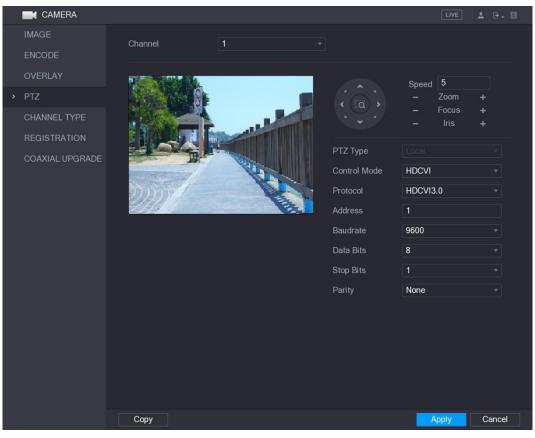


Figure 5-51

<b>.</b>	<b>•</b> •				<b>a -</b> · · <b>-</b> · ·
Sten 2	Continuine the	settings for th	e PTZ connection	narameters	See Table 5-20
<u> 010p 2</u>	Configure and	ootango ioi ai		i pulumetere.	000 10010 0 20.

Parameter	Description
Channel	In the <b>Channel</b> list, select the channel that you want to connect the PTZ
Channel	camera to.
	Local: Connect through RS485 port or coaxial cable.
PTZ Type	Remote: Connect through network by adding IP address of PTZ
	camera to the Device.
	In the Control Mode list, select Serial or HDCVI. For HDCVI series
Control Mode	product, please select HDCVI. The control signal is sent to the PTZ
Control Mode	through the coaxial cable. For the serial mode, the control signal is sent to
	the PTZ through the RS485 port.
Protocol	In the <b>Protocol</b> list, select the protocol for the PTZ camera, for example,
FIOLOCOI	select HDCVI3.0.
	In the Address box, enter the address for PTZ camera. The default is 1.
	NOTE NOTE
Address	The entered address must be the same with the address configured on
	the PTZ camera; otherwise the PTZ camera cannot be controlled from
	the Device.
Baudrate	In the <b>Baudrate</b> list, select the baudrate for the PTZ camera. The default
Daudrate	is 9600.
Data Bits	The default is 8.
Stop Bits	The default is 1.
Parity	The default is NONE.

 Step 3
 Click Apply to save the settings.

 Image: NOTE
 NOTE

 Click Copy to copy the settings to other channels.

# 5.4.2 Working with PTZ Control Panel

PTZ control panel performs the operations such as directing camera in eight directions, adjusting zoom, focus and iris settings, and quick positioning.

## **Basic PTZ Control Panel**

Right-click on the live view screen and then select **PTZ**. The PTZ control panel is displayed. See Figure 5-52.

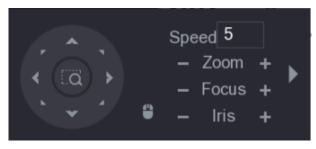
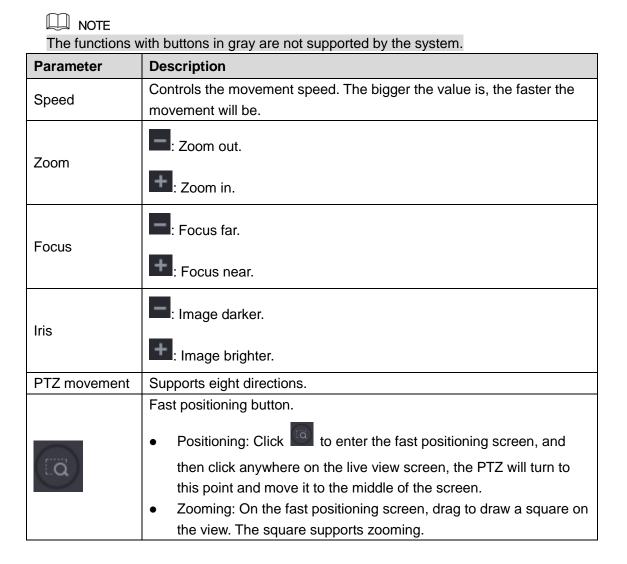


Figure 5-52



Parameter	Description				
	$\diamond$ Dragging upward is to zoom out, and dragging downward is to				
	zoom in.				
	$\diamond$ The smaller the square, the larger the zoom effect.				
	D NOTE				
	Not all models support this function and can only be controlled through				
	mouse operations.				
•	Click , you can control the four directions (left, right, up, and down)				
	PTZ movement through mouse operation.				
►	Click to open the expanded PTZ control panel.				
Table 5-21					

## Expanded PTZ Control Panel

options. See Figure 5-53.

On the basic PTZ control panel, click to open the expanded PTZ control panel to find more

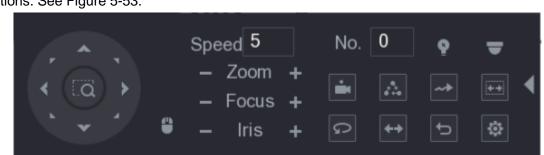


Figure 5-53

## 

- The functions with buttons in gray are not supported by the system.
- Right-click once to return to the interface of PTZ basic control panel.

lcon	Function	lcon	Function
	Preset	C,	Auto Pan
* *+*	Tour	+	Flip
~*	Pattern	ſ	Reset
	Autoscan	\$	Click the <b>AUX Config</b> icon to open the PTZ functions settings interface.
Ŷ	AUX Switch	Þ	Click the Enter Menu icon to open the MENU OPERATION interface.

Table 5-22

# 5.4.3 Configuring PTZ Functions

## 5.4.3.1 Configuring Presets

Step 1 On the Expanded PTZ Control Panel, click

The Preset interface is displayed. See Figure 5-54.



Figure 5-54

- Step 2 Click the direction arrows to the required position.
- <u>Step 3</u> In the **Preset** box, enter the value to represent the required position.
- <u>Step 4</u> Click **Setting** to complete the preset settings.

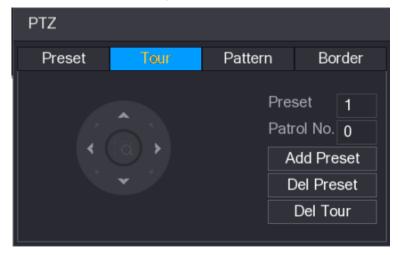
## 5.4.3.2 Configuring Tours

Step 1 On the Expanded PTZ Control Panel, click

The **PTZ** interface is displayed.

Step 2 Click the **Tour** tab.

The Tour tab is displayed. See Figure 5-55.





<u>Step 3</u> In the **Patrol No**. box, enter the value for the tour route.

<u>Step 4</u> In the **Preset** box, enter the preset value.

Step 5 Click Add Preset.

A preset will be added for this tour.

- You can repeat adding more presets.
- Click **Del Preset** to delete the preset for this tour. This operation can be repeated to delete more presets. Some protocols do not support deleting.

### 5.4.3.3 Configuring Patterns

Step 1 On the Expanded PTZ Control Panel, click

The **PTZ** interface is displayed.

<u>Step 2</u> Click the **Pattern** tab.

The Pattern interface is displayed. See Figure 5-56.

PTZ				
Preset	Tour	Pattern	Border	
		Pattern 1		
			Start	
<b>v</b>			End	



- <u>Step 3</u> In the **Pattern** box, enter the value for pattern.
- <u>Step 4</u> Click **Start** to perform the directions operations. You can also go to the PTZ Control Panel to perform the operations of adjusting zoom, focus, iris, and directions.
- Step 5 On the PTZ interface, click End to complete the settings.

### 5.4.3.4 Configuring AutoScan

Step 1 On the Expanded PTZ Control Panel, click

The **PTZ** interface is displayed.

Step 2 Click the Border tab.

The Border interface is displayed. See Figure 5-57.

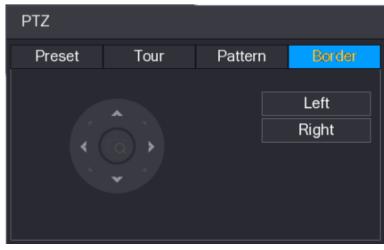
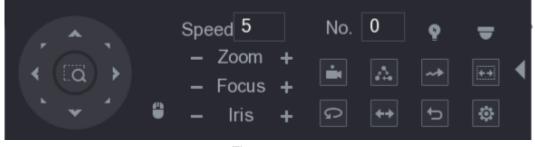


Figure 5-57

<u>Step 3</u> Click the direction arrows to position the left and right borders.

## 5.4.4 Calling PTZ Functions

After you have configured the PTZ settings, you can call the PTZ functions for monitoring from the Expanded PTZ Control Panel. See Figure 5-58.





### 5.4.4.1 Calling Presets

- <u>Step 1</u> On the Expanded PTZ Control Panel, in the **No.** box, enter the value of the preset that you want to call.
- <u>Step 2</u> Click to call the preset.
- <u>Step 3</u> Click again to stop calling the preset.

### 5.4.4.2 Calling Tours

- <u>Step 1</u> On the Expanded PTZ Control Panel, in the **No.** box, enter the value of the tour that you want to call.
- Step 2 Click to call the tour.
- Step 3 Click again to stop calling the tour.

### 5.4.4.3 Calling Patterns

- <u>Step 1</u> On the Expanded PTZ Control Panel, in the **No.** box, enter the value of the pattern that you want to call.
- Step 2 Call **I** to call the pattern.

The PTZ camera moves according to the configured pattern repeatedly.

Step 3 Click again to stop calling the pattern.

### 5.4.4.4 Calling AutoScan

- <u>Step 1</u> On the Expanded PTZ Control Panel, in the **No.** box, enter the value of the border that you want to call.
- Step 2 Click

The PTZ camera performs scanning according to the configured borders.

Step 3 Click again to stop auto scanning.

### 5.4.4.5 Calling AutoPan

Step 1 On the Expanded PTZ Control Panel, click 2 to start moving in horizontal direction.

Step 2 Click again to stop moving.

### 5.4.4.6 Using AUX Button

On the Expanded PTZ Control Panel, click I the AUX setting interface is displayed. See

Figure 5-59.

- In the **Direct Aux** list, select the option that corresponds to the applied protocol.
- In the Aux Num box, enter the number that corresponds to the AUX switch on the decoder.

AUX			
Direct Aux			
NONE 🔻	On	Off	
Aux Num			
1	On	Off	

Figure 5-59

## 5.4.5 Calling OSD Menu

For the coaxial camera, you can call the OSD menu through the Expanded PTZ Control Panel. See Figure 5-58.

Step 1 On the Expanded PTZ Control Panel, click

The MENU OPERATION interface is displayed. See Figure 5-60.

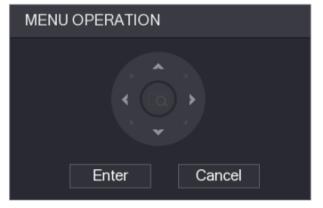


Figure 5-60

### Step 2 Click Enter.

The OSD menu is displayed. See Figure 5-61.



Figure 5-61

- <u>Step 3</u> On the **MENU OPERATION** interface, click the arrow button to select the onscreen parameters.
- Step 4 Click Enter to complete the settings.

# 5.5 Configuring Camera Settings

# 5.5.1 Configuring Image Settings

You can configure the image settings such as saturation, contrast, brightness, sharpness for each connected camera.

### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > CAMERA > IMAGE.

The **IMAGE** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-62 for analog channel and Figure 5-63 for digital channel.

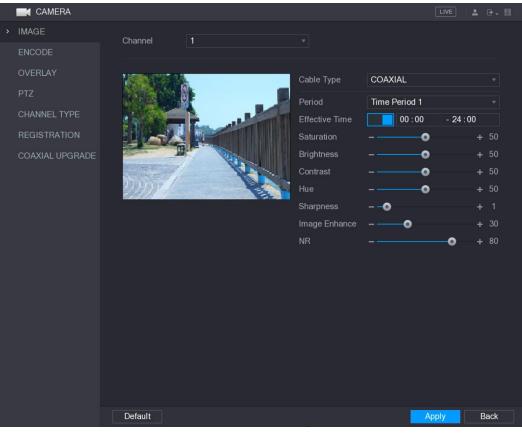


Figure 5-62

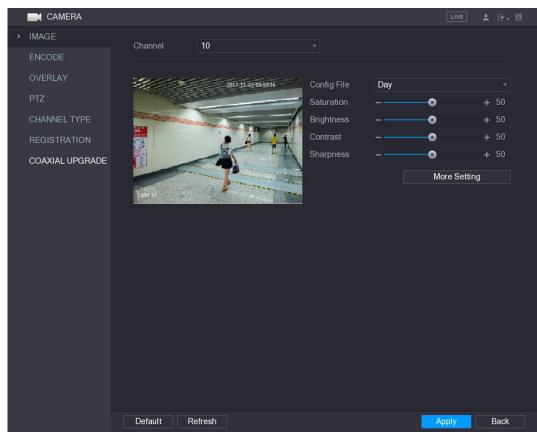


Figure 5-63

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the image parameters. See Table 5-23. On the digital channel interface, click **More Setting** to display more parameters.

Parameter	Description		
Channel	In the <b>Channel</b> list, select the channel that you want to configure.		
	In the <b>Cable Type</b> list, select the cable type that the camera uses.		
Cable Type	NOTE		
51	Not all models support this function.		
	In the <b>Period</b> list, select a time period for the image settings. The		
Period	image settings will be only used during the selected period.		
	Enable the effective function.		
Effective Time	In the <b>Effective Time</b> box, enter the start time and end time for the		
	period you selected.		
	Adjusts the color shades. The bigger the value, the lighter the color		
	will become. This value does not influence the general image		
Saturation	lightness.		
	The value ranges from 0 to 100. The default value is 50. The		
	recommended range is between 40 and 60.		
	Adjusts the image contrast. The bigger the value is, the more obvious		
	the contrast between the light area and dark area will become. You		
	can adjust this value when the contrast is not obvious. However, if the		
Contrast	value is too big, the dark area is likely to become darker and the light		
Contrast	area over exposed. If the value is too small, the image is likely to		
	become dim.		
	The value ranges from 0 to 100. The default value is 50. The		
	recommended range is between 40 and 60.		
	Adjusts the image brightness. The bigger the value is, the brighter the		
	image will become. You can adjust this value when the image as a		
Brightness	whole looks dark or bright. However, the image is likely to become dim		
Digitatooo	if the value is too big.		
	The value ranges from 0 to 100. The default value is 50. The		
	recommended range is between 40 and 60.		
Hue	Adjusts the hue of image. The value ranges from 0 to 100. The default		
	value is 50.		
	Adjusts the sharpness of image edge. The bigger the value is, the		
Sharpness	more obvious the image edge, and the noise is also greater.		
	The value ranges from 1 to 15. The default value is 1.		
Image Enhance	Adjusts the image definition. The bigger the value is, the clearer the		
0	image will become, but there will be more noises.		
NR	Reduces the noises from image. The bigger the value is, the better		
	the image will become.		
	In the <b>Config File</b> list, select <b>Day</b> , <b>Night</b> , <b>Normal</b> , or <b>Switch By</b>		
	<b>Period</b> . The system configures the parameters correspondingly.		
	Day: Apply the configuration during daytime.		
Config File	Night: Apply the configuration during nighttime.		
	Normal: Apply the configuration during day and night.     Switch by Deriod: If you called this option, you need to configure		
	Switch by Period: If you select this option, you need to configure the suprise time and support time where you are leasted		
	the sunrise time and sunset time where you are located.		

Parameter	Description		
Mirror	Enable the function, the left and right side of the video image will be		
WIITO	switched. It is disabled by default.		
	This function specially applies to the image which frame rate is		
3D Denoise	configured as 2 at least. It reduces the noises by making use of the		
SD Denoise	information between two frames. The bigger the value is, the better		
	the effect.		
Flip	In the Flip list, you can select 180° to change the video image display.		
ιıp	By default, the setting is <b>No Flip</b> .		
Light	In the Light list, select Close or Enable to use the backlight		
Light	compensation or not.		
	Configure the white balance to adjust the general hue of the image.		
	The default setting is <b>Auto</b> .		
	Auto: Automatically apply white balance to different colors to		
Scene Mode	make the image color display normally.		
	Sunny: Apply the threshold value to sunny environment.		
	Night: Apply the threshold value to night.		
	Customized: Manually adjust the Red Gain and Blue Gain values.		
	Configure the color and black&white mode of the image. This setting		
	is not affected by the configuration files. The default setting is Auto.		
	Color: The camera outputs color image only.		
	• Auto: Depends on the camera, such as overall brightness and		
Day & Night	whether there is an IR light, either color image or black&white		
	image is output.		
	B/W: The camera outputs Black and white image only.		
	• By Time: The camera outputs image according to the configured		
	sunrise time and sunset time.		

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

# 5.5.2 Configuring Encode Settings

Step 1 Select Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE > Encode.

The **Encode** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-64.

IMAGE	Encode Sna	apshot			
ENCODE	Channel	1 -			
OVERLAY	Main Stream		Sub Stream		
PTZ	Smart Codec		Video		
CHANNEL TYPE	Туре	Regular 🔻	Туре	Sub Stream1 🔹	
REGISTRATION	Compression	H.265	Compression	H.265	
COAXIAL UPGRADE	Resolution	1920x1080(1080P)	Resolution	352*240(CIF) -	
	Frame Rate(FPS)	15 🔹	Frame Rate(FPS)	15 👻	
	Bit Rate Type	CBR	Bit Rate Type	CBR 👻	
	I Frame Interval	1S -	l Frame Interval	1 S -	
	Bit Rate(Kb/S)	2048 -	Bit Rate(Kb/S)	640 -	
		More Setting		More Setting	
	Default Copy			Apply E	lack

Figure 5-64

Step 2 Configure the settings for the main/sub streams parameters. See Table 5-24.

Parameter	Description
Channel	In the Channel list, select the channel that you want to configure the
	settings for.
Smart Codec	Enable the smart codec function. This function can reduce the video
	bit stream for non-important recorded video to maximize the storage
	space.
Туре	• Main Stream: In the <b>Type</b> list, select <b>General</b> , <b>MD</b> (Motion
	Detect), or <b>Alarm</b> .
	Sub Stream: This setting is not configurable.
Compression	In the <b>Compression</b> list, select the encode mode.
	• H.265: Main profile encoding. This setting is recommended.
	H.264H: High profile encoding. Low bit stream with high
	definition.
	H.264: General profile encoding.
	• H.264B: Baseline profile encoding. This setting requires higher bit
	stream compared with other settings for the same definition.
Resolution	In the Resolution list, select resolution for the video.
	The maximum video resolution might be different dependent on your
	device model.

Parameter	Description						
	Configure the frames per second for the video. The higher the value,						
	the clearer and smoother the image will become. Frame rate changes along with the resolution.						
Frame Rate							
(FPS)	Generally, in PAL format, you can select the value from 1 through 25;						
(ГГЗ)	in NTSC format, you can select the value from 1 through 30. However,						
	the specific range of frame rate that you can select depends on the						
	capability of the Device.						
Quality	This function is available if you select <b>VBR</b> in the <b>Bit Rate</b> List.						
Quality	The higher the value, the better the image will become.						
I Frame Interval	The interval between two reference frames.						
	In the Bit Rate list, select a value or enter a customized value to						
Bit Rate (Kb/S)	change the image quality. The bigger the value is, the better the						
	image will become.						
Video	Enable the function for sub stream.						
	Click More Setting, the More Setting interface is displayed.						
Audio Encode	Audio Encode: This function is enabled by default for main						
	stream. You need to manually enable it for sub stream 1. Once						
	this function is enabled, the recorded video file is composite						
	audio and video stream.						
Audio Source	Audio Source: In the Audio Source list, you can select LOCAL						
	and HDCVI.						
	$\diamond$ LOCAL: The audio signal is input from Audio input port.						
	$\diamond$ HDCVI: The audio signal is input from HDCVI camera.						
Audio Format	• Audio Format: In the Audio Format list, select a format that you						
	need.						

Table 5-24

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

Click **Copy** to copy the settings to other channels.

# 5.5.3 Configuring Snapshot Settings

# <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE > Snapshot.

The **Snapshot** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-65.

	CAMERA			
	IMAGE	Encode	Snapshot	
>	ENCODE	Manual Snap	1 • /Time	
	OVERLAY			
	PTZ	Channel	1 *	
	CHANNEL TYPE	Mode	General	
	REGISTRATION	Image Size	352*288(CIF) ▼	
	COAXIAL UPGRADE	Image Quality	4 -	
		Interval	1 Second v	
		Default	Сору	Apply Back

Figure 5-65

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the snapshot parameters. See Table 5-25.

Parameter	Description				
Manual Snap	In the Manual Snap list, select how many snapshots you want to take				
Manual Shap	each time.				
Channel	In the Channel list, select the channel that you want to configure the				
Channel	settings for.				
Mode	In the Mode list, you can select Human Face, Event, or General as				
Mode	the event type for which you want to take a snapshot.				
Image Size	In the Image Size list, select a value for the image.				
	Configures the image quality by 6 levels. The higher the level, the				
Image Quality	better the image will become.				
Interval	Configures or customizes the snapshot frequency.				

Table 5-25

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

Click Copy to copy the settings to other channels.

## 5.5.4 Configuring Overlay Settings

You can configure to display system time and channel name on each channel window in the live view screen.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > CAMERA > OVERLAY > Overlay.

The **Overlay** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-66.

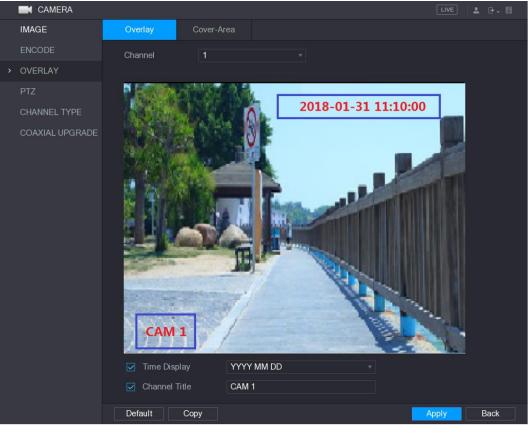


Figure 5-66

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the text overlay parameters. See Table 5-26.

Parameter	Description				
Channel	In the <b>Channel</b> list, select the channel that you want to configure the				
Channel	settings for.				
	Select the Time Display check box to display the system time on				
Time Display	each channel window in the live view screen.				
	In the <b>Time Display</b> list, select time display style.				
	Select the Channel Title check box to display the channel name on				
Channel Title	each channel window in the live view screen.				
	In the <b>Channel Title</b> box, enter the name for the selected channel.				

Table 5-26

Step 3 Click Apply to complete the settings.

Click **Copy** to copy the settings to other channels.

# 5.5.5 Configuring Covered Area Settings

#### Step 1 Select Main Menu > CAMERA > OVERLAY > Cover-Area.

The Cover-Area interface is displayed. See Figure 5-67.

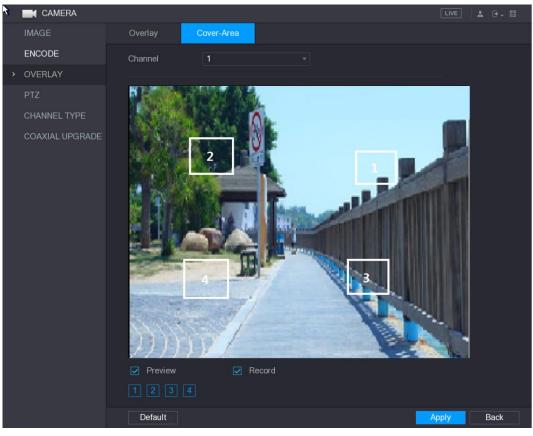


Figure 5-67

Step 2 Configure the settings for the covered area parameters. See Table 5-27.

Description					
In the Channel list, select the channel that you want to configure the					
settings for.					
• Preview: Select the <b>Preview</b> check box to apply the configured					
covered block to the selected channel window in the live view					
screen.					
• Record: Select the <b>Record</b> check box to apply the configured					
covered block to the selected channel window during recording.					
To configure covering block, do the following:					
1. Select the <b>Preview</b> check box or the <b>Record</b> check box, or select					
the both. The "1, 2, 3, 4" buttons are activated.					
2. Click the buttons to select blocks.					
3. A triangle solid black block is displayed. You can drag the block to					
the area that you want to cover and adjust the size of the block.					
4. You can configure total 4 covered blocks.					
-					

Table 5-27

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

# 5.5.6 Configuring Channel Type

You can configure the channel type as **Analog** or **IP** channel. <u>Step 1</u> Select **Main Menu > CAMERA > CHANNEL TYPE**.

							LIVE	💄 🕞 🗸 🚉
IMAGE								
	Channel	Analog           AUTO         CVI         AHD         CVBS         OTHER					IP 🗌	
ENCODE	1							
OVERLAY	2							
PTZ	3							
	4 5	Y Y						
> CHANNEL TYPE	6							
REGISTRATION	7							
	8 9							
COAXIAL UPGRADE	10							
	11						KKKKK	
	12							
	13 14							
	14							
	16							
	17 - 24							
	*Tips:Disab from the las		channel, you c	an add one IF	channel. IP c	hannel setup sl	hall begin	
	from the las	at channel.						
							Apply	Back

#### The CHANNEL TYPE interface is displayed. See Figure 5-68.



<u>Step 2</u> Configure the channels.

- Analog Channel: Select the transmission medium such as CVI, CVBS, and then follow the onscreen instructions to complete the settings.
- IP Channel: The Device provides expanded IP channels for your use. For example, the 17–24 channels in Figure 5-68 are expanded IP channels. To enable the IP channel, select from the last channel number 17–24 check box. Then follow the onscreen instructions to complete the settings.
- The 17–24 channels are only for IP camera and the range changes dependent on the model you purchased.
- The channel selection for analog camera or IP camera are in sequence, for example, if you want to select channels for IP camera, you need to select the 17–24 check box first, and then you cannot jump to select the channel 15 directly until you have selected the channel 16.
- Step 3 Click Apply and follow the onscreen instructions to complete the settings.

# 5.5.7 Upgrading Coaxial Camera

#### Step 1 Select Main Menu > CAMERA > COAXIAL UPGRADE.

The **COAXIAL UPGRADE** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-69.

	CAMERA				
	IMAGE	Update File			Browse
	ENCODE				BIOWSE
	OVERLAY	Device(0/2)			
	PTZ	Channel	Process	System Version	Manufacturer
	CHANNEL TYPE			V1.000.0003.1.R.201	Dahua
				V1.000.0002.3.R.201	Dahua
	REGISTRATION				
>	COAXIAL UPGRADE				
					Start Upgrade

Figure 5-69

Step 2 Click Browse.

The Browse interface is displayed.

Step 3 Select the upgrade file and then click OK.

The **COAXIAL UPGRADE** interface is displayed.

D NOTE

You need to insert the USB storage device that contains the upgrading files.

- <u>Step 4</u> Select the check box of the channel that you want to upgrade.
- Step 5 Click Start Upgrade.

If the upgrading is successful, the system pops up a message indicating the upgrading is completed. If the upgrading is failed, please check if the Device

# 5.6 Configuring Remote Devices

## 5.6.1 Adding Remote Devices

#### 

This function is available after you have configured the channel type as IP channel as described in previous section, see "5.5.6 Configuring Channel Type."

You can add remote devices by adding the IP address.

Select Main Menu > CAMERA > REGISTRATION > Registration, the Registration interface is displayed. See Figure 5-70.

CAMERA					
IMAGE	Registration	Status	Firmware	Upgrade	
ENCODE	Uninitialized	Initia	lize	Show Filter	IPC -
OVERLAY PTZ CHANNEL TYPE		Edit Prev			Address Manu
> REGISTRATION					
COAXIAL UPGRADE	Device Search     Added Device     Channel	III Edit	Delete	Status	, Add Manual Add IP Address
		III Residue bandwi	idth/Total bandwidth:	: 49.50Mbps/49	, Import Export

Figure 5-70

Parameter	Description					
Uninitialized	Enable the Uninitialized function, the uninitialized devices out of the					
Uninitialized	searched devices are displayed in the searched device list.					
Initialize	Select the uninitialized device from the uninitialized device list, and					
Initialize	the click Initialize to start initializing device.					
	In the Show Filter list, select the remote device type that you want to					
	display in the searched device list.					
	None: Display all types of devices.					
Show Filter	IPC: Display the front-end devices.					
	• DVR: Display all storage devices such as NVR, DVR and HCVR.					
	• OTHER: Display the devices that do not belong to IPC or DVR					
	type.					
Searched Device	Displays the searched devices. You can view the device information					
List	such as status, IP address.					
	Click <b>Device Search</b> , the searched devices display in the searched					
	device list.					
	To adjust the display sequence, in the title line, you can click the IP					
Davias Caarah	address, Manufacturer, Type, MAC Address, Port, or Device Name					
Device Search	text. For example, click the IP address text, the sequence icon					
	IP Address is displayed.					
	NOTE NOTE					
	"*" is displayed next to the added device.					
Add	In the Searched Device List area, select the device that you want to					
Add	add.					

Parameter	Description				
	Add the device by manually configuring settings such as IP address,				
Manual Add	channel selection. For details, see "5.6.1.3 Adding Remote Devices				
	Manually."				
Added Device Displays the added devices. You can edit and delete the device, a					
List	view the device information.				
Delete	Select the check box of the added device, and then click Delete to				
Delete	delete the added device.				
Import	Select the searched devices and then click Import to import the				
Import	devices in batches.				
Export	Select the added devices and then click <b>Export</b> . The exported				
Export	devices information is saved into the USB storage device.				

Table 5-28

### 5.6.1.1 Initializing Remote Devices

You can reset the password and IP address of the remote devices through initializing. <u>Step 1</u> Click **Device Search**.

						LIVE	🔔 🕒 🗸 🖁
	Registration	Statu	ıs Firi	mware I	Upgrade		
ENCODE		_					17.5
OVERLAY	Uninitialized		Initialize	Sho	w Filter		IPC 🔻
	50	Edit	Preview	Status	IP A	ddress	Mar 🗕
PTZ					<b>1</b> 92.1	168.1.19	
CHANNEL TYPE		ľ				168.1.31	
> REGISTRATION			LIVE			168.1. <b>1</b> 23	
		ľ	LIVE			.168.1.131	
COAXIAL UPGRADE						.168.1.151	
		<i>▶</i>			192.	.168.1.154	•
	Device Sear	ch				Add	Manual Add
	Added Devic	e.					
	Chanr	nel	Edit	Delete	Status	IP Addr	ess
		Residu	e bandwidth/Tota	l bandwidth: 49.5	0Mbps/49	Import	Export

The searched devices are displayed in the table. See Figure 5-71.

Figure 5-71

<u>Step 2</u> Enable the Initialized function.

The uninitialized devices are displayed. See Figure 5-72.

CAMERA					LIVE	
IMAGE	Registration	Status	Firmware	Upgrade		
ENCODE	Uninitialized	Initia	alize	Show Filter		IPC -
OVERLAY		Edit Prev			Address 🔺	Manu
PTZ					168.1.108	Da
CHANNEL TYPE						
REGISTRATION						
COAXIAL UPGRADE						
	Device Search				Add Ma	anual Add
	Added Device					
	Channel	Edit	Delete	Status	IP Address	
		Residue bandwi	dth/Total bandwidth:	61.50Mbps/61	Import	Export

Figure 5-72

- <u>Step 3</u> Select the uninitialized device that you want to initialize.
- Step 4 Click Initialize.

The Enter Password interface is displayed. See Figure 5-73.

Enter Passwor	a	
	☑ Using current device password and email info.	
	[	Next

Figure 5-73

Step 5 Configure the password and email information.

If you select the **Using current device password and email info** check box, the remote device automatically uses the current password and email information, so you do not need to set the password and email address again and can go to Step 6.

 Clear the Using current device password and email info check box. The password setting interface is displayed. See Figure 5-74.

Enter Passwo	ord	
	Using current de	vice password and email info.
	User	admin
	Password	
		Use a password that has 8 to 32 characters, it can be a combination of letter(s), number(s) and symbol(s) with at least two kinds of them.(please do not use special symbols like ' " ; : 8)
	Confirm Password	
		Next

Figure 5-74

2) Configure the settings for the password setting parameters. See Table 5-29.

Parameter	Description
User	The default is admin.
Password	The new password can be set from 8 characters through 32
	characters and contains at least two types from number, letter and
	special characters (excluding"'", """, ";", ":" and "&").
Confirm Password	Please enter a strong password according to the password strength
	bar indication.

Table 5-29

#### 3) Click **Next**.

#### The **Password Protection** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-75.

Password Protection					
🔽 Email Address					
	To reset password, ple	ease input properly	or update in tim	e	
Back				Next	Skip

Figure 5-75

4) Select the **Email Address** box and enter the email address that you want to reserve for password reset in the future.

```
If you do not want to set the reserved email address, click Skip.
```

#### Step 6 Click Next.

The **NETWORK** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-76.

NETWORK			
Checked Device No.: 1			
STATIC			
IP Address	192 . 168 . 1 . 108	Incremental Value	1
Subnet Mask	255 _ 255 _ 255 _ 0		
Default Gateway	192 . 168 . 1 . 1		
1 IP Address			
1 192.168.1.10			
Back		Next Skip	

Figure 5-76

- <u>Step 7</u> Configure the IP address.
  - Select the **DHCP** check box, you do not need to enter the IP address information, because the system will allocate one IP address to the remote device.
  - Select the **STATIC** check box, you need to enter the IP address, subnet mast, default gateway, and incremental value. The system will allocate the IP address to the remote devices by progressively increasing the last part of the IP address when initializing devices in batches.

#### 

When configuring IP address for multiple remote devices which were not in the same network segment, these remote devices will belong to the same network segment after configuration.

#### Step 8 Click Next.

The initializing is started. After the process is completed, see Figure 5-77.

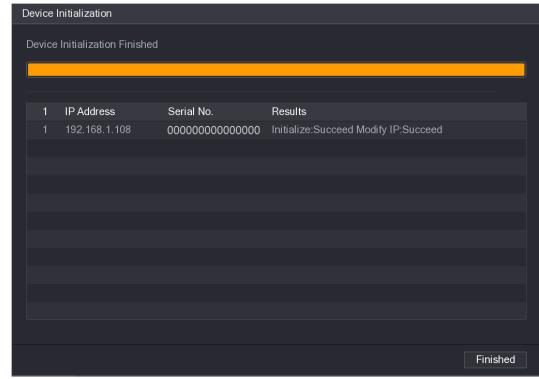


Figure 5-77

<u>Step 9</u> Click **Finished** to complete the settings.

### 5.6.1.2 Adding Remote Devices Automatically

<u>Step 1</u> On the **Registration** interface, click **Device Search** The searched devices are displayed. See Figure 5-78.

									LIVE	
	IMAGE	Reg	istratio	n	Statu		irmware	Upgrade		
	ENCODE		Uninitia	lized		Initialize		Show Filter		IPC 🔻
	OVERLAY		50		Edit	Preview	Statu		IP Address	Mar -
	PTZ		1		L'un	LIVE	Statu V		192.168. <b>1</b> .19	
	CHANNEL TYPE								192.168.1.31	
									192.168.1. <b>1</b> 23	
>	REGISTRATION								192.168.1.131	
	COAXIAL UPGRADE								192.168.1.151	
					ï	LIVE			192.168.1.154	
			<b>Device</b> Added I						Add	Manual Add
				Channe	1	Edit	Delete	Status	IP Add	ress
					Residue	e bandwidth/To	otal bandwidth:	49.50Mbps/49	. Import	Export

Figure 5-78

<u>Step 2</u> Select the check box of the device.

Step 3 Click Add.

The device is added into the Added Device area.

NOTE

- You can also double-click the device to add it into the Added Device area.
- You can add devices in batches.

### 5.6.1.3 Adding Remote Devices Manually

#### Step 1 On the Registration interface, click Manual Add.

The Manual Add interface is displayed. See Figure 5-79.

Manual Add	
Channel	21 🔹
Manufacturer	Onvif
IP Address	192.168.0.0
RTSP Port	554
HTTP Port	80
User Name	admin
Password	
Remote Channel	1
Decoder Buffer	Default 🔻
Encrypt	
	UDP 🔿 MULTICAST
	OK Back

Figure 5-79

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the manual adding device parameters. See Table 5-30.

Parameter	Description
Channel	In the Channel list, select the channel that you want use on the
Channel	Device to connect the remote device.
Manufacturer	In the Manufacturer list, select the manufacturer of the remote
Manulacturer	device.
	In the IP Address box, enter the IP address of remote device.
IP Address	NOTE NOTE
	The default is 192.168.0.0 which the system cannot connect to.
RTSP Port	The default value setting is 554. You can enter the value according to
	your actual situation.
HTTP Port	The default value setting is 80. You can enter the value according to

Parameter	Description			
	your actual situation.			
	If you enter other value, for example, 70, and then you should enter			
	70 after the IP address when logging in the Device by browser.			
User Name	Enter the user name of the remote device.			
Password	Enter the password of the user for the remote device			
Remote Channel	Enter the remote channel number of the remote device that you want			
Remote Channel	to add.			
Decoder Buffer	In the Decoder Buffer list, select Default, Realtime, or Fluent.			
	• If the remote device is added through private protocol, the default			
	type is <b>TCP</b> .			
Drotocol Turo	• If the remote device is added through Onvif protocol, the system			
Protocol Type	supports Auto, TCP, UDP, or MULTICAST.			
	• If the remote device is added through other manufacturers, the			
	system supports <b>TCP</b> and <b>UDP</b> .			
	If the remote device is added through Onvif protocol, selecting the			
Encrypt	Encrypt check box will provide encryption protection to the data being			
	transmitted.			

Table 5-30

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to save the settings.

- Only one device can be added manually at one time.
- indicates successful connection and indicates connection failed.

### 5.6.1.4 Modifying or Deleting Remote Devices

You can modify and delete the added devices.

• To modify the remote devices, do the following:

Step 1 Click or double-click a device.

The Edit interface is displayed. See Figure 5-80.

Edit	
Channel	10 💌
Manufacturer	Onvif -
IP Address	192.168.1.123
RTSP Port	554
HTTP Port	80
User Name	admin
Password	•••••
Remote Channel	1
Decoder Buffer	Default 👻
● Auto ○ TCP ○	
Сору	OK Back

Figure 5-80

- <u>Step 2</u> In the **Channel** list, select the channel that you want to modify settings for.
- <u>Step 3</u> Click **OK** to save the settings.
  - NOTE

Click Copy to copy the user name and password to other channels.

- To delete one or more added devices, do the following:
  - ♦ Click to delete one device
  - Select the check box of the devices that you want to delete, and then click **Delete**.

### 5.6.1.5 Modifying IP Address

You can modify a single IP address or multiple IP addresses of remote devices at the one time.

• To modify a single IP address, do the following:

Step 1 In the Searched Device list area, click for the device that you want to modify IP.

The **Modify IP** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-81.





- <u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for IP address, subnet mask, default gateway, user name, and password.
- Step 3 Enable the Add function to add the device into the Added Device area.
- <u>Step 4</u> Click **OK** to save the settings.
- To modify IP address in batches, do the following:
- <u>Step 1</u> In the Searched Device list area, select the devices that you want to modify IP address in batches.



The Modify IP interface is displayed. See Figure 5-82.

Modify IP	
Batch Modify	
Start Address	192 . 168 . 3 . 133
Subnet Mask	255 . 255 . 0 . 0
Default Gateway	192 .168 . 0 . 1
User Name	admin
Password	
Add	
	OK Back

Figure 5-82

- <u>Step 3</u> Enable the **Batch Modify** function.
- <u>Step 4</u> Configure the settings for start IP address (the IP address is allocated in sequence), subnet mask, default gateway, user name, and password.
- Step 5 Enable the Add function to add the devices into the Added Device area.
- <u>Step 6</u> Click **Apply** to save the settings.

### 5.6.1.6 Exporting IP Address

You can export the added IP address to the USB storage device.

The exported information is saved in .csv file, which includes IP address, port number, channel number, manufacturer, user name, and password.

<u>Step 1</u> Insert the USB storage device to the USB port of the Device.

Step 2 Click Export.

The Browse interface is displayed. See Figure 5-83.

Browse					
Device Name		Defreeb	Format		
Device Name	sdb1(USB USB)	- Refresh	Format		
Total Space	28.63 GB				
Free Space	27.04 GB				
Address	1				
Name		Size	Туре	Delete	•
🗀 LOST.DIR			Folder	Ō	
🗅 Android			Folder	Ô	
📮 err			Folder	ò	
<b>1234567</b>			Folder	ò	
D NVR			Folder	<b>İ</b>	
Screenshot_2018	0523-133141.png	75.8 KB	File	Ô	~
File Backup Encryption					
New Folder			ОК	Back	

Figure 5-83

Step 3 Configure the save path.

<u>Step 4</u> Click **OK** to save the settings.

A pop-up message indicating "Successfully exported" is displayed.

Step 5 Click OK.

When exporting IP address, the **File Backup Encryption** check box is selected by default. The file information includes IP address, port, channel number, manufacturer, user name, and password.

- If you select the File Backup Encryption check box, the file format is .backup.
- If you clear the **File Backup Encryption** check box, the file format is .csv. In this case, there might be a risk of data leakage.

#### 5.6.1.7 Importing IP Address

You can add remote devices by importing IP address information.

- <u>Step 1</u> Insert the USB storage device to the USB port of the Device.
- Step 2 Click Import.

The Browse interface is displayed. See Figure 5-84.

Brows	se				
l	Device Name	sda5(USB DISK)	Refresh		
	Total Space	15.60 GB			
l	Free Space	15.60 GB			
	Address	1			
	Name		Size	Туре	Delete
	D IP			Folder	±.
	RemoteConfig_20	171103141044.csv	464 B	File	ش –
	Config File				
,	Config File				
				ОК	Back

Figure 5-84

- Step 3 Select the file that you want to import.
- <u>Step 4</u> Click **OK** to start importing.

After importing is completed, a pop-up message indicating "The import succeeded" is displayed.

If the IP address that you want to import already exists in the Device, the system will pop up a message to ask you whether to overwrite the existing content.

- Click **OK** to replace the existing one.
- Click Cancel to add it as a separate device in the Added Device area.

# 

- You can edit the exported .csv file and be cautious not to change the file format; otherwise the file cannot be imported as it will be judged as invalid.
- The language of .csv file must match the Device language.
- The import and export through customized protocol is not supported.

### 5.6.2 Managing Remote Devices

You can view the status of remote devices and upgrade.

### 5.6.2.1 Viewing Status

You can view the device information such as connection status, IP address, motion detection, video loss detection, camera name, and manufacturer.

Select **Main Menu > CAMERA > REGISTRATION > Status**, the **Status** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-85.

							l	LIVE 💄 🕞 ,	<b>P</b> Q 0.0
	IMAGE	Registratio	on St	atus	Firmware	Upgrade			
	ENCODE	Device S	status						
	OVERLAY	Cha	nnel St	atus	IP Address	MD	Video Loss	Tampering	
	PTZ			•	192.168.1.123				
	CHANNEL TYPE								
>	REGISTRATION								
	COAXIAL UPGRADE								
		Refre	sn						

Figure 5-85

### 5.6.2.2 Viewing Firmware Information

You can view the device firmware information such as channel number, IP address, manufacturer, system version, video input, audio input, and alarm in.

Select Main Menu > CAMERA > REGISTRATION > Firmware, the Firmware interface is displayed. See Figure 5-86.

										LIV	E	<u>.</u>	🕈 🚽 🙀
IMAGE	egistration		Status		Firmware		Upç	grade					
ENCODE	Channel	IP	Address	Ма	nufacturer	Ту	ре	System	Version	N	lo.		Vi
OVERLAY	11	19	2.168.3.1	136				2.460.0					
PTZ													
CHANNEL TYPE													
REGISTRATION													
COAXIAL UPGRADE													
	Refresh												

Figure 5-86

# 5.6.2.3 Upgrading Remote Devices

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > CAMERA > REGISTRATION > Upgrade. The Upgrade interface is displayed. See Figure 5-87.

						LIVE	L
	IMAGE	Registration	Status	Firmware	Upgrade		
	ENCODE	Device Upgra	de(0/1)				
	OVERLAY	Channel	Status IP Addr	ess System Version	Process	Upgrade	Port
	PTZ	11	• 192.168	.1.123	To be upgraded	Detect	37777
	CHANNEL TYPE						
>	REGISTRATION						
	COAXIAL UPGRADE						
					Hanna da Manual		the second s
				File	Upgrade Manual	Check Online	Upgrade

Figure 5-87

Step 2 Upgrade the device.

- File Upgrade
- 1) Insert a USB storage device containing the upgrade files into the USB port of the Device.
- 2) Select the devices that you want to upgrade.
- 3) Click File upgrade.

The File Upgrade interface is displayed.

- 4) Select the upgrading files and click **Apply**.
- Online Upgrade
- Click Detect or select the check box the device that you want to upgrade and click Manual Check.

The system starts detecting if there is a new version on the online server.

- 2) Select the check box of all the devices that have new version.
- 3) Click Online Upgrade.

- The system will pop up a message to indicate if the upgrading is successful.
- You can use the Type list to filter the devices so that you can find the devices quickly.

# 5.7 Configuring Record Settings

You can record video manually or automatically and configure the recording settings to main stream and sub stream respectively.

# 5.7.1 Enabling Record Control



- Manual recording operation requires the user have the permission to access STORAGE settings.
- Check to ensure the HDD installed in the Device has been formatted properly.

To enter the record control interface, do the following:

<u>Step 1</u> Right-click on the live view screen, the shortcut menu is displayed. On the shortcut

menu, select <b>I</b> Figure 5-88.	Vanu	: lai	> R	ec	ord	J C	on	tro	Ы. Т	<sup>-</sup> he	: RI	EC	OR	D	inte	ərfa	ice	is (	dis	play	/ed	, see
RECORD																						
Main Stream	All	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8		10	11	12	13	14	15	16					
Auto	0																					
Manual																						
Stop																						
Sub Stream																						
Auto																						
Manual																						
Stop																						
Snapshot																						
Enable																						
Disable																						
																App	ly			Back		

Figure 5-88

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the record control parameters. See Table 5-31.

Parameter	Description							
Channel	Displays all the analog channels and the connected digital channels.							
Channel	You can select a single channel or select All.							
Record status	<ul> <li>Auto: Automatically record according to the record type and recording time as configured in the recording schedule.</li> <li>Manual: Keep general recording for 24 hours for the selected channel.</li> <li>Stop: Do not record.</li> </ul>							
Snapshot status	Enable or disable the scheduled snapshot for the corresponding channels.							

Table 5-31

Step 3 Click Apply.

# 5.7.2 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule

You need to configure the storage schedule for the recorded video so that the recorded video can be saved. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule."

# 5.8 Configuring Snapshot Settings

## 5.8.1 Configuring Snapshot Trigger

The snapshot is divided into scheduled snapshot, event triggered snapshot, and face detection triggered snapshot. When the both are enabled, the event triggered snapshot has the priority.

- If there is no alarm event, the system performs scheduled snapshot.
- If there is any alarm event, the system performs event triggered snapshot.

#### 5.8.1.1 Configuring Scheduled Snapshot

- <u>Step 1</u> Right-click on the live view screen, the shortcut menu is displayed.
- <u>Step 2</u> On the shortcut menu, select **Manual > Record Control**.

The **RECORD** interface is displayed.

<u>Step 3</u> In the **Snapshot** area, enable the snapshot for the channels if needed. See Figure 5-89.

00																				 	 
RECOR	RD																				
Ma	in Stream	All		2	2	и	5	6	7	0	0	10	-1-1	10	12	14	15	16			
ivia	in Su cam	All		2	3	4	5	0				10	1.1	12	15	14	15	10			
Aut	o																				
Ma	nual																				
Sto	р																				
Sut	Stream																				
Aut	o																				
Ma	nual																				
Sto	р																				
Sna	apshot																				
Ena	able	0								0									ľ		
Dis	able	0																			
																	Арр	ly		Back	
			_	_		_				_	_	_	_								



#### <u>Step 4</u> Select Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE > Snapshot.

The **Snapshot** interface is displayed.

<u>Step 5</u> In the **Mode** list, select **General**, and then configure other parameters. See Figure 5-90.

	IMAGE	Encode S	napshot	
>	ENCODE	Manual Snap	1 v /Time	
	OVERLAY			
	PTZ	Channel	1 •	
	CHANNEL TYPE	Mode	General	
	REGISTRATION	Image Size	352*288(CIF)	
	COAXIAL UPGRADE	Image Quality	4 🔹	
		Interval	1 SPL 🔻	
		Default	Copy At	Cancel

Figure 5-90

<u>Step 6</u> Click **Apply** to save the settings.

- If you have configured the snapshot schedule, the configuration has been completed.
- If you have not configured the snapshot schedule, see "5.1.4.10 Configuring Snapshot Storage Schedule."

### 5.8.1.2 Configuring Event Triggered Snapshot

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE > Snapshot. The Snapshot interface is displayed.

<u>Step 2</u> In the **Mode** list, select **Event**, and then configure other parameters. See Figure 5-91.

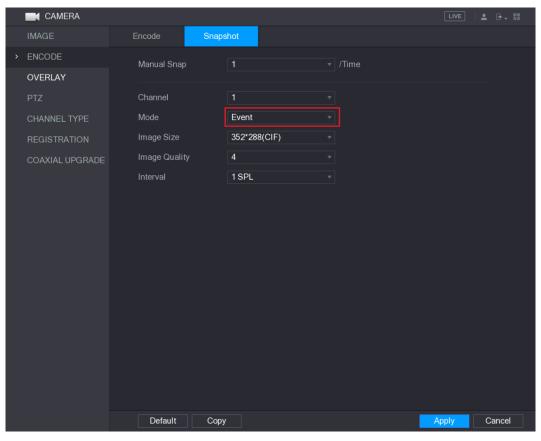


Figure 5-91

<u>Step 3</u> Select **Main Menu > ALARM > VIDEO DETECT**, and select the event type to configure, for example, select the **Motion Detect** tab. See Figure 5-92.

📒 ALARM				
ALARM INFO	Motion Detect Vide	eo Loss Tampering	Diagnosis	
ALARM INPUT	Channel	1	Region	Setting
ALARM OUTPUT	Enable MD		Enable PIR	
> VIDEO DETECT				
ABNORMALITY	Period	Setting	Anti-Dither	5 Sec.
	Alarm Out	Setting	Latch	10 Sec.
	Show Message	Alarm Upload	Send Email	
	Record Channel			
	PTZ	Setting	Post Record	10 Sec.
	Tour			
	🖌 Snapshot			13 14 15 16
	Video Matrix	Buzzer	Log	
	Voice Prompts	None		
	Default Cop	y Test		Apply Back

Figure 5-92

<u>Step 4</u> Select the **Snapshot** check box and select the corresponding channel.

Step 5 Click Apply.

### 5.8.1.3 Configuring Face Detection Triggered Snapshot

- <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE > Snapshot. The Snapshot interface is displayed.
- Step 2 In the **Mode** list, select **Human Face**, and then configure other parameters. See Figure 5-93.

				LIVE 💄 💽 🚆
	IMAGE	Encode	Snapshot	
>	ENCODE	Manual Snap	1 • /Time	
	OVERLAY			
	PTZ	Channel	1 •	
	CHANNEL TYPE	Mode	Human Face 🗸	
	REGISTRATION	Image Size	1280*720(720P) -	
	COAXIAL UPGRADE			
		Default		Apply Cancel

Figure 5-93

<u>Step 3</u> Select Main Menu > FACE DETECT > PARAMETERS > Human Face. The Human Face interface is displayed. See Figure 5-94.

🚊 FACE DETECT				LIVE 💄 🕂 🗸 😫
SMART SEARCH	Human Face			
> PARAMETERS	Channel Enable	1	r Target Filter	Setting
	Period Alarm Out ☐ Send Email ☑ Record Channel	Setting Setting 1 2 3 4 5 6 7	Latch	10 Sec.
	PTZ	Setting	Post Record	10 Sec.
	Snapshot			13 14 15 16
	Buzzer	✓ Log		
	Uvice Prompts	None		
	Default			Apply Back

Figure 5-94

<u>Step 4</u> Select the **Snapshot** check box and select the corresponding channel. <u>Step 5</u> Click **Apply**.

# 5.8.2 Configuring Snapshot Storage Schedule

You need to configure the storage schedule for the snapshot so that the snapshot can be saved. For details, see "5.1.4.10 Configuring Snapshot Storage Schedule."

## 5.8.3 Backing up Snapshots to FTP

#### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > STORAGE > FTP.

	, ,	0				
STORAGE						
BASIC	Enable					
SCHEDULE						
HDD MANAGER	Host IP	0.0.0.0				
ADVANCE	Port	21				
QUOTA	Anonymity					
HDD DETECT	User Name					
REC ESTIMATE	Password					
FTP	Remote Directory					
	File Length(M)	0				
	Image Upload Interval(Sec.)	2				
	Channel	1				
	Week Day	Wed	Alarm	Intel	MD General	
	Period 1	00:00 - 24:00				
	Period 2	00:00 - 24:00				
	Default				Annhu	
	Default Test				Apply Bac	ĸ

The **FTP** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-95.

Figure 5-95

<u>Step 2</u> Enable the FTP function and configure the parameters. For details, see "5.19.6 Configuring FTP Storage Settings."

The snapshots will be uploaded to FTP for backup.

# 5.9 Playing Back Video

# 5.9.1 Enabling Record Control



- Manual recording operation requires the user have the permission to access STORAGE settings.
- Check to ensure the HDD installed in the Device has been formatted properly.

To enter the record control interface, do the following:

<u>Step 1</u> Right-click on the live view screen, the shortcut menu is displayed. On the shortcut menu, select **Manual > Record Control**. The **RECORD** interface is displayed, see Figure 5-96.

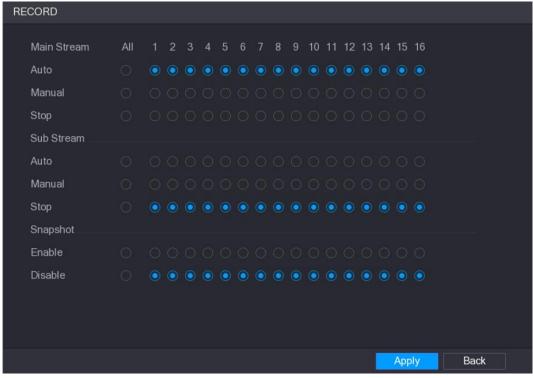


Figure 5-96

Step 2	Configure the set	tings for the record	d control paramete	ers. See Table 5-32.
	Configure the Set	ango for the record	a control paramete	13. Occ 1able 0 02.

Parameter	Description					
Channel	Displays all the analog channels and the connected digital channels.					
Channel	You can select a single channel or select All.					
Record status	<ul> <li>Auto: Automatically record according to the record type and recording time as configured in the recording schedule.</li> <li>Manual: Keep general recording for 24 hours for the selected channel.</li> </ul>					
	Stop: Do not record.					
Snapshot status	Enable or disable the scheduled snapshot for the corresponding					
	channels.					

# 5.9.2 Instant Playback

You can use the instant playback function to play back the previous five minutes to sixty minutes of the recorded video in any channel. For details about instant playback function, see "5.2.2.1 Instant Playback."

## 5.9.3 Main Interface of Video Playback

You can search for and play back the recorded video saved on the Device. Select **Main Menu > VIDEO**, the video search interface is displayed. See Figure 5-97.

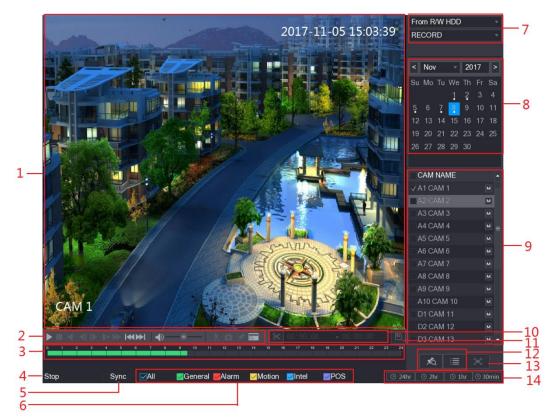


Figure 5-97

No.	Function	Description			
	Display Window	Display the searched recorded video or picture. It supports playing			
		in single-channel, 4-channel, 9-channel, and 16-channel			
		simultaneously.			
1		NOTE NOTE			
		When playing back in a single channel mode, hold down the left			
		mouse button to select the area that you want to enlarge. The area			
		is enlarged after the left mouse button is released. To exit the			
		enlarged status, right-click on the image.			
2	Playback	Playback control buttons. For details about the control buttons, see			
2	Controls Bar	"5.9.3.1 Introducing Playback Controls."			

No.	Function	Description				
3	Time Bar	<ul> <li>Display the type and time period of the current recorded video.</li> <li>In the 4-channel layout, there are four time bars are displayed; in the other view layouts, only one time bar is displayed.</li> <li>Click on the colored area to start playback from a certain time.</li> <li>In the situation when you are configuring the settings, rotate the wheel button on the time bar, the time bar is zooming in from 0. In the situation when playback is ongoing, rotate the wheel button on the time bar, the time bar is zooming from the time point where the playback is located.</li> <li>Time bar colors: Green indicates general type; Red indicates external alarm; Yellow indicates motion detection; Blue indicates intelligent events; Purple indicates POS events.</li> <li>For some models, when you are clicking on the blank area in the time bar, the system automatically jumps to the next time point where there is a recorded video located.</li> </ul>				
4	Play Status	Includes two playback status: <b>Play</b> and <b>Stop</b> .				
5	Sync	Select the <b>Sync</b> check box to simultaneously play recorded videos of different channels in the same period in multi-channel view.				
6	Record type	Select the check box to define the recording type to search for.				
7	Search type	Select the content to play back: <b>Record</b> , <b>PIC</b> , <b>Splice Playback</b> . For details about the selecting search type, see "5.9.3.2 Selecting Search Type."				
8	Calendar	Click the date that you want to search, the time bar displays the corresponding record. The dates with record or snapshot have a small solid circle under the date.				
9	View Layout and Channel Selection	<ul> <li>In the CAM NAME list, select the channel(s) that you want to play back.</li> <li>The window split is decided by how you select the channel(s). For example, if you select one channel, the playback is displayed in the single-channel view; if you select two to four channels, the playback is displayed in the four-channel view. The maximum is eight channels.</li> <li>Click I to switch the streams. I indicates main stream, and i indicates sub stream.</li> </ul>				
10	Video Splice	Splice a section of recorded video and save it. For details about splicing a recorded video, see "5.9.3.3 Clipping Recorded Video."				
11	Backup	Back up the recorded video files. For details, see "5.9.3.4 Backing up Recorded Video."				

No.	Function	Description		
12	List Display	<ul> <li>This area includes Mark List and File List.</li> <li>Click the Mark List button, the marked recorded video list is displayed. Double-click the file to start playing.</li> <li>Click the File List button, the searched recorded video list is displayed. You can lock the files. For details, see "5.9.8 Using the File List."</li> </ul>		
13	Full Screen	Click to display in full screen. In the full screen mode, point to the bottom of the screen, the time bar is displayed. Right-click on the screen to exit full screen mode.		
14	Time Bar Unit	You can select 24hr, 2hr, 1hr, or 30min as the unit of time bar. The time bar display changes with the setting.		
		Table 5-33		

### 5.9.3.1 Introducing Playback Controls Bar

You can perform the operations such as control the speed of playback, add mark, and take snapshots through the playback controls bar. See Figure 5-98 and Table 5-34.



Figure 5-98

#### 

The play backward function and playback speed are dependent on the product version. The actual product shall govern. You can also contact the technical support to consult the hardware version information.

lcon	Function				
N II	Play/Pause.				
	During playing back, you can switch between play and pause.				
	Stop.				
	During playing back, you can click the <b>Stop</b> button to stop playback.				
	Play Backward.				
	• During playing back, click the <b>Play Backward</b> button to backward				
	play the recorded video, the button switches to 🛄; click 🛄				
,	to stop playing backward.				
	<ul> <li>During playing back, click to start playing forward.</li> </ul>				

Icon	Function				
	Previous Frame/Next Frame.				
<b>∢</b> I, I►	<ul> <li>When the playback is paused, click or click to play single-frame recorded video.</li> <li>When playing back single-frame recorded video, click to start playing forward.</li> </ul>				
	Slow Playback.				
▶	<ul> <li>During playing back, click to set the speed of slow playback as SlowX1/2, SlowX1/4, SlowX1/8, or SlowX1/16.</li> <li>During fast playback, click to slow down the speed of fast playback.</li> </ul>				
	Fast Playback.				
*	<ul> <li>During playing back, click to set the speed of fast playback as FastX2, FastX4, FastX8, or FastX16.</li> <li>During slow playback, click to speed up slow playback.</li> </ul>				
	Previous Day/Next Day. Click or click to play the previous day or next day of the current recorded video.				
•) <b>O</b>	Adjust volume of playback.				
*	Smart Search. For details about using the smart search, see "5.9.4 Smart Search."				
<b>D</b>	In the full screen mode, click to take a snapshot and save into the USB storage device or mobile HDD.				
*	Add Mark for the recorded view. For details about adding mark, see "5.9.5 Marking and Playing Back Video."				
	Hide POS Hide.				
NOT A STREET	During single-channel playback, click to display or hide POS information on the screen.				

Table 5-34

# 5.9.3.2 Selecting Search Type

You can search the recorded videos, splice, or snapshots from HDD or external storage device.

• From R/W HDD: Recorded videos or snapshots playback from HDD of the Device. See Figure 5-99.

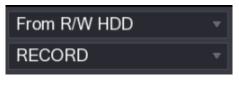


Figure 5-99

• From I/O Device: Recorded videos playback from external storage device. See Figure 5-100.

Click Browse, select the save path of recorded video file that you want to play.

Double-click the video file or click with to start playing.



Figure 5-100

### 5.9.3.3 Clipping Recorded Video

During playback, clip sections of recorded video and save to the USB storage device. For the video clip interface, see Figure 5-101.

$\approx$			
-----------	--	--	--



Step 1 Select a recorded video that you want to play.

- Click locate to start playing from the beginning.
- Double-click anywhere in the time bar colored area to start playback.
- <u>Step 2</u> Click on the time bar to select the start time, and then click k to start clipping.

Step 3 Click on the time bar to select the end time, and then click k to stop clipping.

Step 4 Click

The **BACKUP** dialog box is displayed. You can back up the files.

#### 

- You can clip the video of a single-channel or multiple channels.
- Maximum 1024 files can be backed up at one time.
- The files that are selected in the File List cannot be clipped.

### 5.9.3.4 Backing up Recorded Video

You can back up the recorded video file or splice video file into the USB storage device.

- <u>Step 1</u> Select the recorded video file that you want to back up. You can select the following two types of files:
  - Recorded video file: Click III, the **File List** area is displayed. Select the file(s) that you want to back up.
  - Splice video file. For details about splicing video file, see "5.9.3.3 Clipping Recorded Video."

Step 2 Click

The **BACKUP** dialog box is displayed. See Figure 5-102.

BACK	KUP							
	1	Nam	ne(Type)	Free S	pace/Total Spa	ace	Device Status	
		√ sdb5(USE	B DISK)	15.60	) GB/15.60 GB		Ready	
	2	🗸 СН Туре	Start Time	e	End Time	Size(	KB)	
		√ 1 R	17-11-08 01	:00:00	17-11-08 02:0	00:00 1	847872	
	2	√ 1 R	17-11-08 02	:00:00	17-11-08 03:0	00:00 1	847632	
	Space I	Required / Sp	ace Remainin	g:3.52 G	B/15.60 GB	Backu	p Clear	

Figure 5-102

#### Step 3 Click Backup.

If you do not want to back the file, clear the check box.

### 5.9.4 Smart Search

During playback, you can analyze a certain area to find if there was any motion detection event occurred. The system will display the images with motion events of the recorded video.

III NOTE

Not all models support this function.

To use the Smart Search function, you need to enable the motion detection for the channel by selecting **Main Menu > ALARM > VIDEO DETECT > Motion Detect**.

To use the Smart Search function, do the following:

<u>Step 1</u> Select **Main Menu > VIDEO**, the video search interface is displayed.

<u>Step 2</u> In the **CAME NAME** list, select the channel(s) that you want to play.

Step 3 Click or double-click anywhere in the time bar colored area to start playback.

Step 4 Click



The grid is displayed on the screen.

D NOTE

- Only single-channel supports smart search.
- If multi-channels are selected, double-click on the channel window to display this channel only on the screen, and then you can start using smart search function.
- <u>Step 5</u> Drag the pointer to select the searching area.

III NOTE

The grid area supports 22×18(PAL) and 22×15(NTSC).

#### Step 6 Click

The screen starts playing back the motional splices of recorded video for the selected searching area.

Step 7 Click to exit the playback.

# 5.9.5 Marking and Playing Back Video

You can mark the recording for somewhere important. Then you can easily find the marked recording by searching time and mark name.

#### Marking a Video

<u>Step 1</u> Select **Main Menu > VIDEO**, the video search interface is displayed.

Step 2 In the playback mode, click

The Add Mark dialog box is displayed. See Figure 5-103.

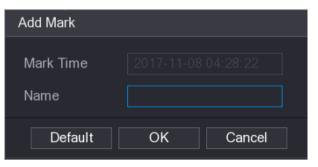


Figure 5-103

- <u>Step 3</u> In the **Name** box, enter a name.
- Step 4 Click OK.

This marked video file displays in the Mark List.

#### Playing Back Marked Video

#### III NOTE

This function is supported on single-channel playback. <u>Step 1</u> In the **CAME NAME** list, select one channel.



The Mark List interface is displayed. See Figure 5-104.

00 : 00 : 00	۹
1	
Mark Time Name	
03:19:30 123	
10:30:34 456	
Name	
Play time before the mark	
0 Sec.	
\$	j

Figure 5-104

<u>Step 3</u> Double-click the file that you want to play back.

To search the marked video by time, in the SEARCH box on the top of the interface,

enter the time, and then click

#### Playing Back Time before the Mark

You can configure to play N seconds of the marked video before the marked time.

<u>Step 1</u> In the **Name** box, enter the name of a marked video.

<u>Step 2</u> In the **Playback time before the mark** box, enter N seconds.

Step 3 Click

The playback starts from N seconds before the marked time.

If there is N seconds exist before the marked time, the playback starts from N seconds before the marked time. If there is not, it plays back as much as there is.

#### Managing Marked Video

In the Mark List interface, click k, the Manager interface is displayed. See Figure 5-105.

Manager		
Channel	5 🔹	
Start Time	2017 - 11 - 08 00 : 00 : 00	
End Time	2017 - 11 - 09 00 : 00 : 00	Search
2 CH	Mark Time	Name
1 5	2017-11-08 03:19:30	123
2 5	2017-11-08 10:30:34	456
Delete		Cancel

Figure 5-105

- Be default, it manages all the marked videos of the selected channel.
- To search the marked video, select channel number from the **Channel** list, enter time in **Start Time** box and **End Time** box, and then click **Search**.
- All the marked videos display in time order.
- To modify the name of marked video, double-click a marked video, the **Edit Mark** dialog box is displayed.
- To delete the marked video, select the marked video, and then click **Delete**.

#### 

After opening the **Manger** interface, the playback will pause until exiting this interface. If the marked video that was in playing back is deleted, the playback will start from the first marked video in the **Mark List**.

## 5.9.6 Playing Back Snapshots

You can search and play back the snapshots.

- Step 1 Select Main Menu > VIDEO, the video search interface is displayed.
- <u>Step 2</u> In the **Search Type** list, select **PIC**.
- Step 3 In the Channel list, select a channel number.
- <u>Step 4</u> In the **Calendar** area, select a date.

Step 5 Click

The system starts playing snapshots according to the configured intervals.

## 5.9.7 Playing Back Splices

You can clip the recorded video files into splices and then play back at the same time to save your time.

Not all models support this function.

Step 1 Select Main Menu > VIDEO, the video search interface is displayed.

Step 2 In the Search Type list, select Splice Playback; In the Split Mode list, select 4, 9, or 16. See Figure 5-106.

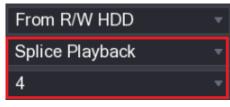


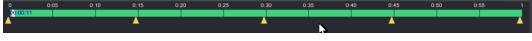
Figure 5-106

<u>Step 3</u> In the **Calendar** area, select a date.

<u>Step 4</u> In the **CAM NAME** list, select a channel.

Only single-channel supports this function.

- Step 5 Start playing back splices. See Figure 5-107.
  - Click Late, the playback starts from the beginning.
  - Double-click anywhere on the time bar, the playback starts from where you click.





Every recorded video file must be at least five minutes. If a recorded video file is less than 20 minutes but still choose to split into four windows, the system will automatically adjust the windows quantity to ensure every splice is more than five minutes, and in this case it is possible that there are no images are displaying in some windows.

## 5.9.8 Using the File List

You can view all the recorded videos within a certain period from any channel in the File List.

- <u>Step 1</u> Select **Main Menu > VIDEO**, the video search interface is displayed.
- Step 2 Select a channel(s).

Step 3 Click

The File List interface is displayed. See Figure 5-108.

00:00:00 Q
1 StartTime Type
00:00:00 R
01:00:00 R
02:00:00 R
03:00:00 R
04:00:00 R
05:00:00 R
06:00:00 R
07:00:00 R
08:00:00 R
09:00:00 R
10:00:00 R
11:00:00 R
Start Time 17-11-08 00:00:00
End Time
17-11-08 01:00:00
Size(KB) 1847776

Figure 5-108

Step 4 Start playback.

- Click , the playback starts from the first file by default.
- Click any file, the system plays back this file.

D NOTE

- In the time box on the top of the file list interface, you can enter the specific time to search the file that you want to view.
- In the File List area, there are 128 files can be displayed.
- File type: R indicates general recorded video; A indicates recorded video with external alarms; M indicates recorded video with motion detection events; I indicates recorded video with intelligent vents.
- Click to return to the interface with calendar and CAM NAME list.

### Locking and Unlocking the Recorded Video

• To lock the recorded video, on the **File List** interface, select the check box of the recorded

video, and then click

• To view the locked information, click *III*, the **FILE LOCKED** interface is displayed.

The recorded video that is under writing or overwriting cannot be locked.

 To unlock the recorded video, in the FILE LOCKED interface, select the video, and then click Unlock. See Figure 5-109.

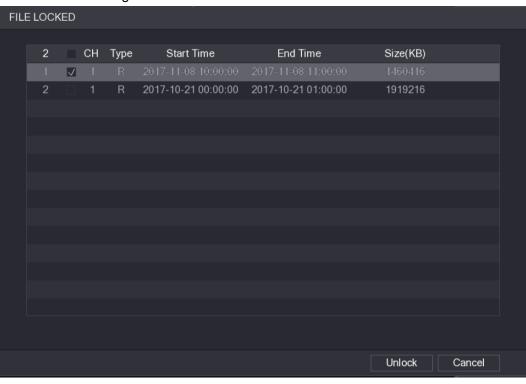


Figure 5-109

# 5.10 Alarm Events Settings

## 5.10.1 Alarm Information

You can search, view and back up the alarm information.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ALARM > ALARM INFO.

The **ALARM INFO** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-110.

🔔 ALARM			LIVE 📃 🛓 💽 🗸
ALARM INFO	T		
ALARM INPUT	Туре АІІ		
	Start Time 2018 - 02 - 05 00	:00:00	
ALARM OUTPUT	End Time 2018 - 02 - 06 00	:00:00	Search
VIDEO DETECT		Divida	
ABNORMALITY	49 Log Time Event	Playba	ick 🔶
ADNORIVIALITY	36 2018-02-05 11:37:46 <video loss<="" td=""><td></td><td></td></video>		
	37 2018-02-05 11:37:46 <video loss<="" td=""><td></td><td></td></video>		
	38 2018-02-05 13:38:19 <tampering< td=""><td></td><td></td></tampering<>		
	39 2018-02-05 13:38:24 <tampering< td=""><td></td><td></td></tampering<>		
	40 2018-02-05 15:03:10 <tampering< td=""><td></td><td></td></tampering<>		
	41 2018-02-05 15:03:12 <tampering< td=""><td></td><td></td></tampering<>		
	42 2018-02-05 15:18:51 <video loss<="" td=""><td></td><td></td></video>		
	43 2018-02-05 15:18:51 <video loss<="" td=""><td></td><td></td></video>		
	44 2018-02-05 15:18:51 <video loss<="" td=""><td></td><td></td></video>		
	45 2018-02-05 15:18:51 <video loss<="" td=""><td></td><td></td></video>		
	46 2018-02-05 15:18:51 <video loss<="" td=""><td></td><td></td></video>		
	47 2018-02-05 15:18:51 No HDD		
	48 2018-02-05 15:18:51 <video loss<="" td=""><td></td><td></td></video>		
	49 2018-02-05 15:18:52 <video loss<="" td=""><td></td><td></td></video>		
		1/1 > GoTo 1 Ba	ckup Details

Figure 5-110

- <u>Step 2</u> In the **Type** list, select the event type; In the **Start Time** box and **End Time** box, enter the specific time.
- Step 3 Click Search.

The search results are displayed.

- <u>Step 4</u> Click **Backup** to back up the search results into the external storage device.

  - Click 🕑 to play the alarm event.
  - Select an event and click **Details** to view the detailed information of the event.

## 5.10.2 Alarm Input Settings

Connect the alarm input and output ports by referring to "4.3 Connecting to Alarm Input and Output." You can configure the alarm settings for each channel individually or apply the settings to all channels and then save the settings.

### 5.10.2.1 Configuring Local Alarms

You can connect the alarm device to the alarm input port of the Device. When the alarm is activated on the alarm device, the alarm information will be uploaded to the Device, and then the Device outputs the local alarms in the way that you configure in this section.

Step 1 Select Main Menu > ALARM > ALARM INPUT > Local.

The Local interface is displayed. See Figure 5-111.

🔔 ALARM				
ALARM INFO	Local Ala	arm Box IPC Ext	IPC Offline	HDCVI Alarm
ALARM INPUT     ALARM OUTPUT     VIDEO DETECT	Alarm In Enable	1 *	Alarm Name Type	Alarm In1 NO v
ABNORMALITY	Period Alarm Out Show Message Record Channel PTZ Tour Snapshot	Setting Setting ✓ Alarm Upload 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 Setting 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 1 2 3 4 5 6 7	Post Record 8 9 10 11 12 1 8 9 10 11 12	5 Sec. 10 Sec. 13 14 15 16 10 Sec. 13 14 15 16
	☐ Video Matrix	None •	✓ Log	
	Default Cop	ру		Apply Back

Figure 5-111

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the local alarms. See Table 5-35.

Parameter	Description		
Alarm In	Select the channel number.		
Alarm Name	Enter the customized alarm name.		
Enable	Enable or disable the local alarm function.		
Туре	In the <b>Type</b> list, select <b>NO</b> or select <b>NC</b> as the voltage output type.		
	Click Setting to display setting interface.		
Period	Define a period during which the motion detection is active. For details,		
Fellou	see "Setting Motion Detection Period" section in "5.10.4.1 Configuring		
	Motion Detect Settings."		
Anti-Dither	Configure the event detection lasting time. The system records only		
Anti-Ditner	one event during this period.		
	Click Setting to display setting interface.		
	General Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the alarm devices		
	connected to the selected output port.		
Alarm Out	External Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the connected		
	alarm box.		
	Wireless Siren: Enable alarm activation through devices		
	connected by USB gateway or camera gateway.		
	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after the		
Latch	external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 0 seconds to 300		
	seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.		
Show Message	Select the Show Message check box to enable a pop-up message in		
Show wessaye	your local host PC.		

Parameter	Description		
	Select the Alarm Upload check box to enable the system to upload the		
Alarm Upload	alarm signal to the network (including alarm center) when an alarm		
	event occurs.		
	Select the Send Email check box to enable the system to send an		
	email notification when an alarm event occurs.		
Send Email	NOTE NOTE		
	To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in Main		
	Menu > NETWORK > EMAIL.		
	Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected channel(s)		
	starts recording after an alarm event occurs.		
Desard Channel	NOTE NOTE		
Record Channel	The recording for alarm and auto snapshot must be enabled. For		
	details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule"		
	and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."		
	Click <b>Setting</b> to display the PTZ interface.		
PTZ	Enable PTZ activation function. For each PTZ camera, select the		
	preset that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs.		
	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after		
Post Record	the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300		
	seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.		
Tour	Select the <b>Tour</b> check box to enable a tour of the selected channels.		
	Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected		
	channel.		
Snapshot	NOTE NOTE		
	To use this function, select Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE >		
	Snapshot, in the Mode list, select Event.		
	Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event		
	occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in "Main		
Video Matrix	Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR."		
	NOTE NOTE		
	Not all models support this function.		
Buzzer	Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.		
Log	Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log.		
Vaios Dromata	Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a local		
Voice Prompts	alarm event.		

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

NOTE

- Click **Default** to restore the default setting.
- Click **Copy**, in the **Copy** dialog box, select the additional channel(s) that you want to copy the local alarm settings to, and then click **Apply**.

### 5.10.2.2 Configuring Alarms from Alarm Box

You can connect the alarm box to the RS485 port of the Device. When the alarm is detected by the alarm box, the alarm information will be uploaded to the Device, and then the Device outputs the alarms in the way that you configure in this section.

	🔔 ALARM					LIVE	
	ALARM INFO	Local	Alarm Box	IPC Ext	IPC Offline	HDCVI Alarn	
>	ALARM INPUT	Alarm Box	4		Status		
	ALARM OUTPUT	Alarm In	1		Alarma	Alarm In49	
	VIDEO DETECT	Enable			Туре	NO 🔻	
	ABNORMALITY	Period	Setting				
		Alarm Out	Setting		Latch	10 Sec.	
		Show Message			Send Email		
		🛃 Record Chann	el < <u>1</u> 23				
		PTZ	Setting		Post Record	10 Sec.	
		Tour					
		Snapshot					
		Video Matrix	Buzzer		🔽 Log		
		Voice Prompts	None				
		Default				Apply	Back

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ALARM > ALARM INPUT > Alarm Box. The Alarm Box interface is displayed. See Figure 5-112.

Figure 5-112

- <u>Step 2</u> In the **Alarm Box** list, select the alarm box number corresponding to the address number configured by the DIP switch on the Alarm Box.
- Step 3 In the Alarm In list, select the alarm input port on the Alarm Box.
- <u>Step 4</u> Configure the settings for other parameters of the Alarm Box. For details, see Table 5-35.
- <u>Step 5</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

Click **Default** to restore the default setting.

### 5.10.2.3 Configuring Alarms from External IP Cameras

## Step 1 Select Main Menu > ALARM > ALARM INPUT > IPC Ext.

The IPC Ext interface is displayed. See Figure 5-113.

🔔 ALARM				
ALARM INFO	Local	Alarm Box	C Ext IPC Offline	HDCVI Alarm
ALARM INPUT     ALARM OUTPUT     VIDEO DETECT	Channel Enable	13	▼ Alarm Name Type	Alarm In13 NO v
ABNORMALITY	Period Alarm Out Show Message Record Channe PTZ		Anti-Dither Latch Send Email 6 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 1 Post Record	5 Sec. 10 Sec. 3 14 15 16 10 Sec.
	<ul> <li>Tour</li> <li>Snapshot</li> <li>Video Matrix</li> <li>Video Recenta</li> </ul>	12345 12345 Buzzer	5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 <b>1</b> ✓ Log	
	Uvice Prompts	None		
	Default	Copy Refresh		Apply Back

Figure 5-113

- Step 2 Configure the alarm input settings from the external IPC. For details, see Table 5-35.
- <u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

- Click **Default** to restore the default setting.
- Click **Copy** to copy the settings to other channels.
- Click Refresh to refresh configured settings.

### 5.10.2.4 Configuring Alarms for IP Camera Offline

You can configure the alarm settings for the situation when the IP camera is offline. <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ALARM > ALARM INPUT > IPC Offline. The IPC Offline interface is displayed. See Figure 5-114.

ALARM INFO Local Alarm Box IPC Ext IPC Offline HDCVI Alarm	
ALARM INPUT     Channel     13	
ALARM OUTPUT Enable	
VIDEO DETECT	
ABNORMALITY Alarm Out Setting Latch 10 Sec.	
☐ Show Message	
<b>Record Channel</b> 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16	
PTZ Setting Post Record 10 Sec.	
<b>Tour</b> 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16	
<b>Snapshot</b> 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16	
Video Matrix Buzzer 🖌 Log	
Voice Prompts None	
Default Copy Ba	ack

Figure 5-114

- Step 2 Configure the alarm input settings from the external IPC. For details, see Table 5-35.
- <u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.
  - NOTE
  - Click **Default** to restore the default setting.
  - Click **Copy** to copy the settings to other channels.

### 5.10.2.5 Configuring Alarms from HDCVI Devices

#### Step 1 Select Main Menu > ALARM > ALARM INPUT > HDCVI Alarm.

The HDCVI Alarm interface is displayed. See Figure 5-115.

🖲 ALARM					LIVE	1 - F
ALARM INFO	Local	Alarm Box	IPC Ext	IPC Offline	HDCVI Alarm	
> ALARM INPUT	Channel	All				
ALARM OUTPUT	4 5-14			Tomo	Name	
VIDEO DETECT	1 Enabl	e Setting Status	Channel 1 HDC	<b>Type</b> CVI Voltage Alarm	Name Chn1-HDCVI Voltag	e Alarm-1
ABNORMALITY						
					Apply	Back

Figure 5-115

<u>Step 2</u> In the **Channel** list, select a channel or **all**.

Step 3 Click

The **Setting** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-116.

Setting				
Access Type	Camera Gateway	Access Point	Chn2-Airfly	
Туре	HDCVI Voltage Alarm	Name	Chn2-HDCVI Voltage A	
Period Alarm Out	Setting Setting	PTZ Latch	Setting 10	Sec.
Post Record	10 Se	ec. Anti-Dither	5	Sec.
Record CH				
Snapshot				
Tour				
Voice Prompts	None			
More Setting	Setting			
Default			ОК	Back

Figure 5-116

- <u>Step 4</u> Configure the settings for other parameters of the Alarm Box. For details, see Table 5-35.
- $\underline{Step 5} \quad Click \text{ } \textbf{OK} \text{ to complete the settings}.$

## 5.10.3 Alarm Output Settings

### 5.10.3.1 Configuring Alarm Output

When the Device activates alarms, the connected alarm device generates alarms in the way that you can configure in this section. You can connect to the output port of the Device or connect wirelessly.

- **Auto**: When an alarm event is triggered on the Device, the connected alarm device generates alarms.
- Manual: The alarm device is forced to keep generating alarms.
- **Stop**: The alarm output function is not enabled.
- Step 1 Select Main Menu > ALARM > ALARM OUTPUT > ALARM Out.

		nace is displaye	ed. Gee i igure 5-117.	
🚨 ALARM				
ALARM INFO	Alarm Out	White Light S		
ALARM INPUT ALARM OUTPUT VIDEO DETECT ABNORMALITY	General Alarm Alarm Type Auto Manual Stop	All 1 2 3 4 5 6 • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •		
	Status Ext. Alarm			
	Alarm Release	OK		
				Apply Back

The ALARM OUTPUT interface is displayed. See Figure 5-117.

Figure 5-117

<u>Step 2</u>	Configure the	settings fo	r the alarm	output.	For details,	see Table 5-36.
---------------	---------------	-------------	-------------	---------	--------------	-----------------

Parameter		Description		
General Alarm Type		Select alarm type for each alarm output port.		
General Alann	Status	Indicates the status of each alarm output port.		
	Alarm Box	Select the alarm box number corresponding to the address		
Ext. Alarm		number configured by the DIP switch on the Alarm Box.		
EXI. Alann	Alarm Type	Select the alarm type for each alarm output ports.		
	Status	Indicates the status of each alarm output port.		
Alarm Release		Click <b>OK to</b> clear all alarm output status.		

Table 5-36

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to save the settings.

### 5.10.3.2 Configuring White Light

When the motion detection alarm is activated, the system links the camera to generate white light alarm.

To use this function, connect at least one white light camera to your Device.

```
<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ALARM > ALARM OUTPUT > White Light.
```

The White Light interface is displayed. See Figure 5-118.

🖲 ALARM				LIVE	💄 🕞 🗕 👼
ALARM INFO	Alarm Out	White Light			
ALARM INPUT	Channel	2			
ALARM OUTPUT					
VIDEO DETECT	Latch	30	Sec.		
ABNORMALITY	Mode	💽 Solid On	🔾 Flash		
	Flash Frequenc				
	Refresh			Apply	Back

Figure 5-118

Step 2 Configure the settings for the white light parameters. See Table 5-37.

Parameter	Description
Channel	In the Channel list, select a channel that is connected to a white
Channel	light camera.
	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after
Latch	the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 5 seconds to 30
	seconds, and the default value is 5 seconds.
Mode	Set the alarm mode of white light to be <b>Solid on</b> or <b>Flash</b> .
	When setting the alarm mode of white light to be <b>Flash</b> , you can
Flash Frequency	select the flash frequency from Low, Middle, and High.

Table 5-37

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

### 5.10.3.3 Configuring Siren

When the motion detection alarm is activated, the system links the camera to generate sound alarm.

To use this function, connect at least one camera that supports audio function.

```
Step 1 Select Main Menu > ALARM > ALARM OUTPUT > Siren.
```

```
The Siren interface is displayed. See Figure 5-119.
```

🔔 ALARM					
ALARM INFO	Alarm Out	White Light	Siren		
ALARM INPUT	Channel	2		Play	
> ALARM OUTPUT					
VIDEO DETECT	Latch	30		Sec.	
ABNORMALITY	Audio <b>Clip</b>	Clip 1			
	Volume	High			
	Audio Clip Up	ograde			
	Upgrade File			Browse	
				Start Upgrade	
	Refresh				Apply Back

Figure 5-119

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the siren parameters. See Table 5-38.

Parameter	Description				
Channel	In the Channel list, select a channel that is connected to a camera				
Channel	that supports audio function.				
Play	Click Play to manually trigger				
	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after				
Latch	the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 5 seconds to 30				
	seconds, and the default value is 5 seconds.				
Audio Clip	Select the audio clip for the siren sound. The default setting is Clip				
Audio Clip	1.				
Volumo	Select the volume for the audio clip. You can select the flash				
Volume	frequency from Low, Middle, and High.				
	Import the upgrade audio file (.bin) to upgrade the alarm audio file				
Update File	of the camera. For details, see "Upgrade Audio File of Camera				
	."				

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

#### Upgrade Audio File of Camera

This function is supported only on the local interface, and not supported on the web.

<u>Step 1</u> Prepare a USB device or other external storage device and plug it into the Device.

#### Step 2 Click Browse.

The **Browse** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-120.

Browse					
Device Name Total Space Free Space	sdb5(USB USB) 15.62 GB 14.51 GB	- Refresh			
Address					
Name		Size	Туре	Delete	
printf_20180202	093719.txt	1.0 KB	File		
kmsg_printf_20	180202093719.txt	21.2 KB	File	ā	
🖹 printf.txt		648.0 KB	File		
📓 kmsg_printf.txt		1.7 KB	File	亩	
📄 printf_20180202	094124.txt	903 B	File		
🗎 kmsg_printf_20	180202094124.txt	0 B	File	亩	
Update File					
			OK	Back	

Figure 5-120

Step 3 Select the upgrade audio file (.bin).

Step 4 Click **OK** to return to the Siren interface.

Step 5 Click Start Upgrade to upgrade the alarm audio file of the camera.

### 5.10.4 Video Detection

Video detection adopts computer vision and image processing technology. The technology analyzes the video images to detect the obvious changes such as moving objects and blurriness. The system activates alarms when such changes are detected.

### 5.10.4.1 Configuring Motion Detect Settings

When the moving object appears and moves fast enough to reach the preset sensitivity value, the system activates the alarm.

To configure the motion detect settings, do the following:

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ALARM > VIDIEO DETECT > Motion Detect. The Motion Detect interface is displayed. See Figure 5-121.

alarm						IVE	1 D0
ALARM INFO	Motion Detect Vid	eo Loss Ta	ampering	Diagnosis			
ALARM INPUT	Channel	1		Region	Setting		
ALARM OUTPUT	Enable MD			Enable PIR			
> VIDEO DETECT	Period	Setting		Anti-Dither	5	Sec.	
ABNORMALITY	Alarm Out	Setting		Latch	5 10	Sec.	
	Show Message	Alarm Uploa		Send Email	10		
	✓ Record Channel						
	PTZ	Setting		Post Record	10	Sec.	
	🗌 Tour						
	Snapshot						
	🗌 Buzzer			Log			
	Voice Prompts	None					
	White Light	Siren					
	Default Cop	oy Test			Арр	ly	Back

Figure 5-121

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the motion detection parameters. See Table 5-39.

Parameter	Description					
Channel	In the <b>Channel</b> list, select a channel to set the motion detection.					
Region	Click <b>Setting</b> to define the motion detection region.					
Enable MD	Enable or disable the motion detection function.					
Enable PIR	<ul> <li>PIR function helps enhancing the accuracy and validity of motion detect. It can filter the meaningless alarms that are activated by the objects such as falling leaves, flies. The detection range by PIR is smaller than the field angle.</li> <li>PIR function is enabled by default if it is supported by the cameras. Enabling PIR function will get the motion detect to be enabled automatically to generate motion detection alarms; if the PIR function is not enabled, the motion detect just has the general effect.</li> <li>Only when the channel type is CVI, the PIR function can be enabled.</li> <li>If the camera does not support PIR function, it will be unusable.</li> <li>If the Device does not support PIR function, it will not be displayed on the interface.</li> </ul>					
Period	Define a period during which the motion detection is active.					
Anti-Dither	Configure the event detection lasting time. The system records only one event during this period.					

Parameter	Description					
Alarm Out	<ul> <li>Click Setting to display setting interface.</li> <li>General Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the alarm devices connected to the selected output port.</li> <li>External Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the connected alarm box.</li> <li>Wireless Siren: Enable alarm activation through devices connected by USB gateway or camera gateway.</li> </ul>					
Latch	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after the external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 0 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds. If you enter 0, there will be no delay.					
Show Message	Select the <b>Show Message</b> check box to enable a pop-up message in your local host PC.					
Alarm Upload	Select the <b>Alarm Upload</b> check box to enable the system to upload the alarm signal to the network (including alarm center) when an alarm event occurs.					
Send Email	<ul> <li>Select the Send Email check box to enable the system to send an email notification when an alarm event occurs.</li> <li>NOTE</li> <li>To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in</li> <li>Main Menu &gt; NETWORK &gt; EMAIL.</li> </ul>					
Record Channel	Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected channel(s) starts recording after an alarm event occurs. NOTE The recording for motion detection and auto recording function must be enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."					
PTZ	Click <b>Setting</b> to display the PTZ interface. Enable PTZ activation function. For each PTZ camera, select the preset that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs. NOTE Motion Detect can only activate PTZ preset.					
Post Record	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.					
Tour	Select the <b>Tour</b> check box to enable a tour of the selected channels.					
Snapshot	Select the <b>Snapshot</b> check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel. NOTE To use this function, select <b>Main Menu &gt; CAMERA &gt; ENCODE &gt;</b> <b>Snapshot</b> , in the <b>Mode</b> list, select <b>Event</b> .					

the function. When an alarm event tputs the settings configured in <b>R</b> .
R.
tion.
a buzzer noise at the Device.
the Device to record a local alarm
st/voice prompts in response to a
the white light alarm of the camera.

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to save the settings.

D NOTE

- Click **Default** to restore the default setting.
- Click **Copy**, in the **Copy** dialog box, select the additional channel(s) that you want to copy the motion detection settings to, and then click **Apply**.
- Click **Test** to test the settings.

#### Setting the Motion Detection Region

<u>Step 1</u> Next to **Region**, click **Setting**.

The region setting screen is displayed.

- <u>Step 2</u> Point to the middle top of the interface.
  - The setting interface is displayed. See Figure 5-122.

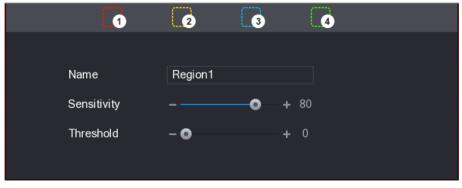


Figure 5-122

<u>Step 3</u> Configure the regions settings. You can configure totally four regions.

- 1) Select one region, for example, click 10.
- Drag on the screen to select the region that you want to detect. The selected area shows the color that represents the region.
- 3) Configure the parameters.

Parameter	Description
Name	Enter a name for the region.
Sensitivity	Every region of every channel has an individual sensitivity value.
	The bigger the value is, the easier the alarms can be activated.

Parameter	Description
Threshold	Adjust the threshold for motion detect. Every region of every channel
	has an individual threshold.

Figure 5-123

When anyone of the four regions activates motion detect alarm, the channel where this region belongs to will activate motion detect alarm.

- <u>Step 4</u> Right-click on the screen to exit the region setting interface.
- <u>Step 5</u> On the **Motion Detect** interface, click **Apply** to complete the settings.

#### **Setting Motion Detection Period**

#### DI NOTE

The system only activates the alarm in the defined period.

#### <u>Step 1</u> Next to **Period**, click **Setting**.

The **Setting** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-124.





<u>Step 2</u> Define the motion detection period. By default, it is active all the time.

- Define the period by drawing.
  - ◇ Define for a specified day of a week: On the timeline, click the half-hour blocks to select the active period.
  - ♦ Define for several days of a week: Click 🛄 before each day, the icon

switches to . On the timeline of any selected day, click the half-hour blocks

to select the active periods, all the days with 📟 will take the same settings.

♦ Define for all days of a week: Click All, all 🛄 switches to 🔤. On the

timeline of any day, click the half-hour blocks to select the active periods, all the days will take the same settings.

• Define the period by editing. Take Sunday as an example.



The **Period** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-125.

Period		
Current Date:	Sunday	
Period 1	00:00 - 24:00	
Period 2	00:00 - 24:00	
Period 3	00:00 - 24:00	
Period 4	00:00 - 24:00	
Period 5	00:00 - 24:00	
Period 6	00:00 - 24:00	
Сору		
Sunday	🗌 Monday 🔄 Tuesday 🔄 Wednesday 🗌 Thursday 📄 Friday 📄 Saturday	
	OK Back	

Figure 5-125

- 2) Enter the time frame for the period and select the check box to enable the settings.
  - $\diamond$  There are six periods for you to set for each day.
  - ♦ Under Copy, select All to apply the settings to all the days of a week, or select specific day(s) that you want to apply the settings to.
- 3) Click **OK** to save the settings.

<u>Step 3</u> On the **Motion Detect** interface, click **Apply** to complete the settings.

### 5.10.4.2 Configuring Video Loss Settings

When the video loss occurs, the system activates the alarm. To configure the motion detect settings, do the following:

#### Step 1 Select Main Menu > ALARM > VIDIEO DETECT > Video Loss.

The Video Loss interface is displayed. See Figure 5-126.

🔔 ALARM				LIVE	
ALARM INFO	Motion Detect Vid	leo Loss Tampe	ring Diagnosis		
ALARM INPUT	Channel	1			
ALARM OUTPUT	Enable				
> VIDEO DETECT					
ABNORMALITY	Period Alarm Out	Setting Setting	CAM AntiDither Latch	0 Sec. 10 Sec.	
	Show Message	✓ Alarm Upload	Send Email	IU Sec.	
	Record Channel	12345	6 7 8 9 10 11 12		
	PTZ	Setting	Post Record	10 Sec.	
	Tour				
	Snapshot				
	Buzzer	🗹 Log			
	Voice Prompts	None			
	Default Cop	ру		Apply	Back

Figure 5-126

<u>Step 2</u> To configure the settings for the video loss detection parameters, see "5.10.4.1 Configuring Motion Detect Settings."

For PTZ activation, different from motion detection, the video loss detection can activate PTZ preset, tour, and pattern.

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

- Click **Default** to restore the default setting.
- Click **Copy**, in the **Copy** dialog box, select the additional channel(s) that you want to copy the motion detection settings to, and then click **Apply**.

### 5.10.4.3 Configuring Tampering Settings

When the camera lens is covered, or the video is displayed in a single color because of the causes such as sunlight status, the monitoring cannot be continued normally. To avoid such situations, you can configure the tampering alarm settings.

Step 1 Select Main Menu > ALARM > VIDIEO DETECT > Tampering.

The Tampering interface is displayed. See Figure 5-127.

🔔 ALARM				
ALARM INFO	Motion Detect Vid	leo Loss Tampering	Diagnosis	
ALARM INPUT	Channel	1 *		
ALARM OUTPUT	Enable		Sensitivity	3 🔹
<ul> <li>VIDEO DETECT</li> </ul>	Period	Catting	CAM AntiDither	0 Sec.
ABNORMALITY	Alarm Out	Setting Setting	Latch	0 Sec.
	Show Message	Alarm Upload	Send Email	000.
	Record Channel			3 14 15 16
	PTZ	Setting	Post Record	10 Sec.
	Tour			3 14 15 16
	Snapshot			3 14 15 16
	Buzzer	✓ Log		
	Voice Prompts	None 👻		
	Default Co	ру		Apply Back

Figure 5-127

<u>Step 2</u> To configure the settings for the tampering detection parameters, see "5.10.4.1 Configuring Motion Detect Settings."

For PTZ activation, different from motion detection, the video loss detection can activate PTZ preset, tour, and pattern.

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

- Click **Default** to restore the default setting.
- Click **Copy**, in the **Copy** dialog box, select the additional channel(s) that you want to copy the motion detection settings to, and then click **Apply**.

### 5.10.4.4 Configuring Diagnosis Settings

### 

This function can be used only when it is supported by the camera.

When the video appear the conditions such as blurry, overexposed, or the color changes, the system activates the alarm.

To configure the diagnosis settings, do the following:

#### Step 1 Select Main Menu > ALARM > VIDIEO DETECT > Diagnosis.

The **Diagnosis** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-128.

📒 ALARM					
ALARM INFO	Motion Detect	Video Loss	Tampering	Diagnosis	
ALARM INPUT	Channel	1			
ALARM OUTPUT	Enable			Rule	Setting
> VIDEO DETECT	Period	Setting			
ABNORMALITY	Alarm Out	age 🔽 Alarm	Upload	Latch	10 Sec.
	Default				Apply Back

Figure 5-128

- <u>Step 2</u> To configure the settings for the diagnosis parameters, see "5.10.4.1 Configuring Motion Detect Settings."
- <u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

Click Default to restore the default setting.

#### Setting the Types for Diagnosing Targets

#### <u>Step 1</u> Next to **Rule**, click **Setting**.

The **Diagnosis** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-129.

Diagnosis		
Stripe	□ -—•	+ 30
Noise	□ -—•	+ 30
Color Cast	□•	+ 30
Out of Focus	□•	+ 30
Overexposure	□ -—•	+ 30
	Apply	Back

Figure 5-129

<u>Step 2</u> Select the items that you want to diagnose and set the threshold (30 by default). See Table 5-40.

Parameter	Description
	A horizontal, vertical or diagonal stripe that might appear in the
Stripe	video because of device aging or electronic interruption. Such
	stripe brings visual interruption.
Noise	Video noises such as blurriness or quality reduction that is caused
NOISE	by optical distortion or device problem during camera shooting.
Color Cast	Variances in the normal proportions of RGB colors.
	Blurry video is caused during camera shooting, transferring and
Out of Focus	processing. Such condition is a common image quality reduction
	problem and defined as out of focus.
	The video brightness refers to the intensity of image pixel. The
Overeypequire	range is between 0 (the darkest black) and 255 (the brightest
Overexposure	white). If the brightness exceeds the threshold, the image is over
	exposed.
	The range is from 1 through 100. If the value after diagnosing is
Threshold	higher than what you set, the system activates the alarm to the
	corresponding diagnosing types such as stripe.

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to save the settings.

The system returns to the **Diagnosis** interface.

<u>Step 4</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

Click **Default** to restore the default setting.

## 5.10.5 System Events

You can configure the alarm output for three types of system event (HDD, Network, and User). When there is an abnormal system event occurs, the system activates alarms in the way that you configure in this section.

### 5.10.5.1 Configuring HDD Event Settings

Step 1 Select Main Menu > ALARM > ABNORMITY > HDD.

The HDD interface is displayed. See Figure 5-130.

🔔 ALARM					[	LIVE	
ALARM INFO	HDD Ne	twork	User				
ALARM INPUT	Event Type	No HDD					
ALARM OUTPUT	Enable						
VIDEO DETECT							
> ABNORMALITY		0 - #1			10		
	Alarm Out	Setting		Latch	10	Sec.	
	Show Message	🗹 Alarm Upload		Send Email			
	Buzzer	🔽 Log					
	Voice Prompts	None					
					Арр	ly	Back

Figure 5-130

Ctop 2	Configura the	a atting and far th		Can Table F 11
<u>Step z</u>	Conligure the	settings for tr	ie noo eveni	. See Table 5-41.

Parameter	Description		
Event Type	In the Event Type list, select No HDD, HDD Error, or HDD No Space		
Lvent Type	as the event type.		
Enable	Enable or disable the HDD event detection function.		
	Click Setting to display setting interface.		
	General Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the alarm devices		
	connected to the selected output port.		
Alarm Out	External Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the connected		
	alarm box.		
	Wireless Siren: Enable alarm activation through devices		
	connected by USB gateway or camera gateway.		
	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after the		
Latch	external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300		
	seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.		
Show Message	Select the Show Message check box to enable a pop-up message in		
Show Wessage	your local host PC.		
	Select the Alarm Upload check box to enable the system to upload the		
Alarm Upload	alarm signal to the network (including alarm center) when an alarm		
	event occurs.		

Parameter	Description
	Select the Send Email check box to enable the system to send an
	email notification when an alarm event occurs.
Send Email	NOTE NOTE
	To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in Main
	Menu > NETWORK > EMAIL.
Buzzer	Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.
Log	Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log.
Voice Prompts	Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a HDD
	alarm event.
	Table 5. 41

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

## 5.10.5.2 Configuring Network Event Settings

### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ALARM > ABNORMITY > Network.

The **Network** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-131.

🔔 ALARM						LIVE	💄 🕞 🗸 📖
ALARM INFO	HDD	Network	User				
ALARM INPUT	Event Type	Net Disconne	ection 🔹				
ALARM OUTPUT	Enable						
VIDEO DETECT							
> ABNORMALITY							
	Alarm Out	Setting		Latch	10	Sec.	
	Show Message			🗌 Send Email			
	Record Channe						
	Buzzer	🔽 Log		Post Record	10	Sec.	
	Voice Prompts	None					
					Ар	ply	Back

Figure 5-131

Step 2	Configure the settings for t	the Network event. See Table 5-42.

Parameter	Description			
	In the Event Type list, select Net Disconnection, IP Conflicted, or			
Event Type	MAC Conflicted as the event type.			
Enable	Enable or disable the Network event detection function.			

Parameter	Description				
	Click Setting to display setting interface.				
	General Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the alarm devices				
	connected to the selected output port.				
Alarm Out	External Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the connected				
	alarm box.				
	Wireless Siren: Enable alarm activation through devices				
	connected by USB gateway or camera gateway.				
	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after the				
Latch	external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300				
	seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.				
Show Massaga	Select the Show Message check box to enable a pop-up message in				
Show Message	your local host PC.				
	Select the Send Email check box to enable the system to send an				
	email notification when an alarm event occurs.				
Send Email	NOTE NOTE				
	To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in Main				
	Menu > NETWORK > EMAIL.				
Buzzer	Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.				
Log	Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log.				
Voice Prompte	Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a				
Voice Prompts	network alarm event.				

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

## 5.10.5.3 Configuring User Event Settings

### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ALARM > ABNORMITY > User.

The **User** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-132.

🔔 ALARM						LIVE	
ALARM INFO	HDD	Network	User				
ALARM INPUT	Event Type	Illegal Logi	n 🔻	Attempt(s)	5		
ALARM OUTPUT	Enable			Lock Time	5	Min.	
VIDEO DETECT							
> ABNORMALITY	Alarm Out	Setting		Latch	10	Sec.	
				Send Email	10		
	Uoice Pror						
					Ap	ply	Back

Figure 5-132

Step 2	Configure the	settings for the	llser event	See Table 5-43.
$\frac{Olop Z}{2}$	Configure the	Soungs for the		

Parameter	Description				
Event Type	In the Event Type list, select Illegal Login.				
	Enable the user error detection function.				
Enable	If you do not enable this function, there will be no limit for wrong				
LIIADIC	password entry and the account cannot be locked because of the				
	wrong password.				
Attompt(c)	Set the maximum number of allowable wrong password entries. The				
Attempt(s)	account will be locked after your entries exceed the maximum number.				
Lock Time	Set how long the account is locked for. The value ranges from 1 minute				
LOCK TIME	to 60 minutes.				
	Click Setting to display setting interface.				
	General Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the alarm devices				
	connected to the selected output port.				
Alarm Out	External Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the connected				
	alarm box.				
	Wireless Siren: Enable alarm activation through devices				
	connected by USB gateway or camera gateway.				
	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after the				
Latch	external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300				
	seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.				

Parameter	Description
	Select the Send Email check box to enable the system to send an
	email notification when an alarm event occurs.
Send Email	NOTE NOTE
	To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in Main
	Menu > NETWORK > EMAIL.
Buzzer	Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.
Log	Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log.
Voice Prompts	Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a user
	account alarm event.

Step 3 Click Apply to complete the settings.

# 5.11 Configuring IVS Function

The IVS function processes and analyzes the images to extract the key information to match with the preset rules. When the detected behaviors match with the rules, the system activates alarms.

The IVS function and face detection function cannot be enabled at the same time.

## 5.11.1 Configuring Intelligent Settings

You can configure the intelligent settings for both analog cameras and IP cameras.

DI NOTE

- Not all models support this function.
- Please disable the expanded IP channels first before using this function for analog cameras.
- <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > IVS > INTELL SETTING.

The INTELL SETTING interface is displayed. See Figure 5-133.

<u></u> ⊛_ıvs						LIVE	99 - <del>9</del> 9
SMART SEARCH	Channel	1					
> INTELL SETTING		-					
	0 Enable	Name	Туре	Draw	Trigger	Delete	Р
						Add	
						Apply	Back

Figure 5-133

- <u>Step 2</u> In the **Channel** list, select the channel number that you want to configure the IVS function.
- Step 3 Click Add.

One line of rule is displayed. See Figure 5-134.

j⊛j ivs							LIVE	
SMART SEARCH	Channe		1					
> INTELL SETTING			-					
	1	Enable	Name	Туре	Draw	Trigger	Delete	Р
			Rule1	Tripwire		\$		
							Ad	d
							Apply	Back

Figure 5-134

- <u>Step 4</u> Configure the parameters for the rule that you selected.
- <u>Step 5</u> Select the check box of the rule to enable it.
- <u>Step 6</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

### 5.11.1.1 Configuring Tripwire Rules

When the target object crosses the tripwire in the defined direction, the system activates alarms.

- The tripwire can be configured as a straight line or broken line.
- Supports detecting one-way or two-way tripwire crossing.
- Supports multiple tripwires in the same scenario to meet the complexity.
- Supports size filtering for target.

<u>Step 1</u> On the rule line that you added, in the **Type** list, select **Tripwire**. See Figure 5-135.

j⊛j ivs							LIVE	💄 🕞 🗸 🛤
SMART SEARCH	Channe		1					
> INTELL SETTING								
	1	Enable	Name	Туре	Dra	aw Trigge	r Delete	Р
			Rule1		- /			
								Add
							Apply	Back

Figure 5-135

Step 2 Draw a tripwire.

- 1) In the **Channel** list, select the channel that you want to configure the rules for.
- 2) Click .

The monitoring screen to configure the tripwire rules is displayed. See Figure 5-136 for analog camera and the IP camera without preset, and see Figure 5-137 for IP camera with preset.

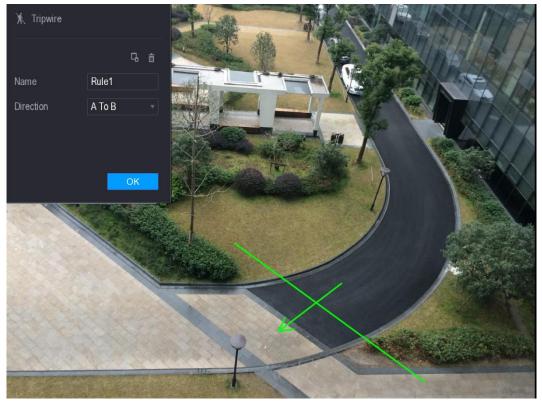


Figure 5-136



Figure 5-137

3) Configure the settings for the parameters of drawing rules. See Table 5-44.

Parameter	Description
Name	Enter the customized rule name.
Direction	Set the direction of the tripwire. You can choose A to B (left to
Direction	right), <b>B to A</b> (right to left), and <b>Both</b> .

Parameter	Description	
Filtering Target	Click to draw areas to filter the target. NOTE You can configure two filtering targets (maximum size and minimum size). When the target that is crossing the tripwire is smaller than the minimum size or larger than the maximum size, no alarms will be activated. The maximum size should be larger than the minimum size.	
Preset	In the <b>Preset</b> list, select the preset that you want to configure the	
	rule for.	

- 4) Drag to draw a tripwire. The tripwire can be a straight line, broken line or polygon.
- 5) Click **OK** to save the settings.
- Step 3 Click to set the actions to be triggered.

The Trigger interface is displayed. See Figure 5-138.

Trigger				
Period	Setting			
Alarm Out	Setting	Latch	10	Sec.
Show Message	🗹 Alarm Upload	🗌 Send Email		
🛃 Record Channel				
PTZ	Setting	Post Record	10	Sec.
🗌 Tour				
Snapshot				
Buzzer		🗹 Log		
Voice Prompts	None			
			ОК	Back

Figure 5-138

<u>Step 4</u> Configure the triggering parameters. See Table 5-45.

Parameter	Description	
Period	Click Setting to display set interface.	
	Define a period during which the alarm linkage is active. For	
	details, see "Setting Motion Detection Period" section in "5.10.4.1	
	Configuring Motion Detect Settings."	

Parameter	Description	
Alarm Out	Click Setting to display setting interface.	
	General Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the alarm	
	devices connected to the selected output port.	
	External Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the	
	connected alarm box.	
	Wireless Siren: Enable alarm activation through devices	
	connected by USB gateway or camera gateway.	
Latch	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after	
	the external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 0 seconds	
	to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.	
Show Message	Select the <b>Show Message</b> check box to enable a pop-up message	
	in your local host PC.	
	Select the Alarm Upload check box to enable the system to	
Alarm Upload	upload the alarm signal to the network (including alarm center)	
	when an alarm event occurs.	
	Select the Send Email check box to enable the system to send an	
	email notification when an alarm event occurs.	
Send Email	NOTE NOTE	
	To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in	
	Main Menu > NETWORK > EMAIL.	
	Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected	
	channel(s) starts recording after an alarm event occurs.	
Record Channel	NOTE NOTE	
Record Channel	The recording for intelligence event and auto recording function	
	must be enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded	
	Video Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."	
	Click <b>Setting</b> to display the PTZ interface.	
PTZ	Enable PTZ activation function. For each PTZ camera, select the	
	preset that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs.	
	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording	
Post Record	after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to	
	300 seconds.	
Taura	Select the <b>Tour</b> check box and the channels to enable a tour of the	
Tour	selected channels when an alarm event occurs.	
	Select the <b>Snapshot</b> check box to take a snapshot of the selected	
	channel when an alarm event occurs.	
Snapshot	NOTE NOTE	
	To use this function, select Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE >	
	Snapshot, in the Mode list, select Event.	
Video Matrix	Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event	
	occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in	
	"Main Menu > Display > Tour."	
	NOTE NOTE	
	Not all models support this function.	

Parameter	Description
Buzzer	Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device when
Duzzei	an alarm event occurs.
Log	Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm
	log when an alarm event occurs.
Voice Promote	Select the check box to enable audio broadcast in response to an
Voice Prompts	alarm event.

<u>Step 5</u> Click **OK** to save the settings.

The INTELL SETTING interface is displayed.

Step 6 Select the Enable check box, and then click Apply.

The tripwire detecting function is active. When the target object crosses the tripwire in the defined direction, the system activates alarms.

## 5.11.1.2 Configuring Intrusion Rules

When the target enters and leaves the defined area, or the target appears in the defined area, the system activates alarms.

- You can define the shape and quantity of intrusion areas.
- Supports detecting the behaviors that enter and leave the intrusion areas.
- Supports detecting the behaviors that are moving in the intrusion areas. The quantity of areas and lasting time can be configured.
- Supports size filtering for target.

<u>Step 1</u> On the rule line that you added, in the **Type** list, select **Intrusion**. See Figure 5-139.

j⊛j ivs								LIVE	L →
SMART SEARCH	Channe	2	1						
> INTELL SETTING			-						
	2	Enable	Name	Туре		Draw	Trigger	Delete	Р
	1		Rule1	Tripwire				ā	
	2		Rule2	Intrusion	•	1	8	tin	
								A	dd
								Apply	Back

Figure 5-139

#### Step 2 Draw an area.

- 1) In the **Channel** list, select the channel that you want to configure the rules for.
- 2) Click

The monitoring screen to configure the intrusion rules is displayed. See Figure 5-140 for analog camera and the IP camera without preset, and see Figure 5-141 for IP camera with preset.

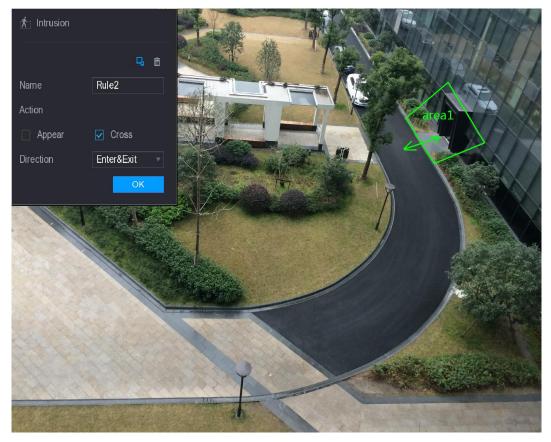


Figure 5-140

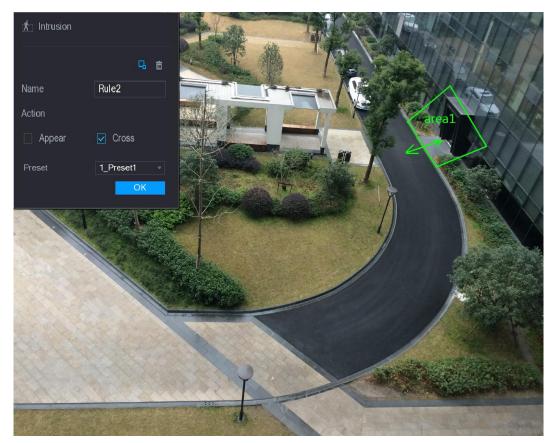


Figure 5-141

3)	Configure the	e settings for	the parameter	s of drawing rules.	See Table 5-46.
-,					

Parameter	Description
Name	Enter the customized rule name.
Action	Configure the actions that are defined as intrusion. You can select
Action	the Appear check box and the Cross check box.
Direction	In the <b>Direction</b> list, select the direction of crossing the configured
Direction	area. You can select Enter&Exit, Enters, and Exits.
Filtering Target	Click to draw areas to filter the target. NOTE You can configure two filtering targets (maximum size and minimum size). When the target that is crossing the tripwire is smaller than the minimum size or larger than the maximum size, no alarms will be activated. The maximum size should be larger than the minimum size.
Preset	In the <b>Preset</b> list, select the preset that you want to configure the
	rule for.

- 4) Drag to draw an area.
- 5) Click **OK** to save the settings.
- Step 3 Click to set the actions to be triggered. For details, see "5.11.1.1 Configuring Tripwire Rules."
- <u>Step 4</u> Select the **Enable** check box, and then click **Apply**.

The intrusion detecting function is active. When the target enters and leaves the area, or the target appears in the defined area, the system activates alarms.

## 5.11.1.3 Configuring Abandoned Rules

When the object is placed in the defined detection area for more than the set time, the system activates alarms.

- You can define the shape and quantity of detecting areas.
- Period value can be configured.
- Supports size filtering for target.

<u>Step 1</u> On the rule line that you added, in the **Type** list, select **Abandoned**.

The Abandoned interface is displayed. See Figure 5-142.

🙊 ivs						LIVE	🕈 🗸 🔛
SMART SEARCH	Channel	1					
> INTELL SETTING	Channel	1					
	3 Enable		Туре	Draw	Trigger	Delete	Р
		Rule1	Tripwire 🔻		\$		
	2	Rule2	Intrusion 🔹	ľ	\$	ā	
	3	Rule3	Abandoned 🔻	ľ	\$	ā	
						Add	
						Apply	Back
							Back

Figure 5-142

Step 2 Draw an area.

1) In the **Channel** list, select the channel that you want to configure the rules for.



The monitoring screen to configure the abandoned rules is displayed. See Figure 5-143 for analog camera and see Figure 5-144 for IP camera.

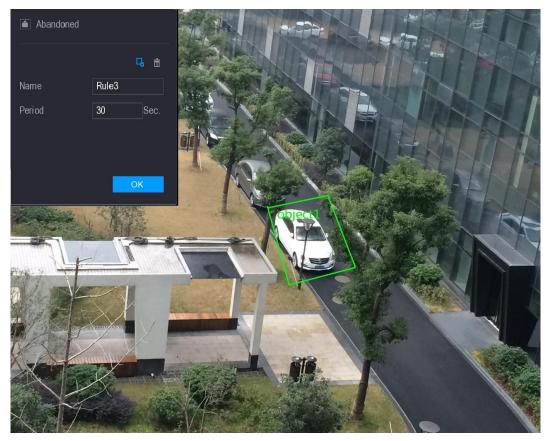


Figure 5-143

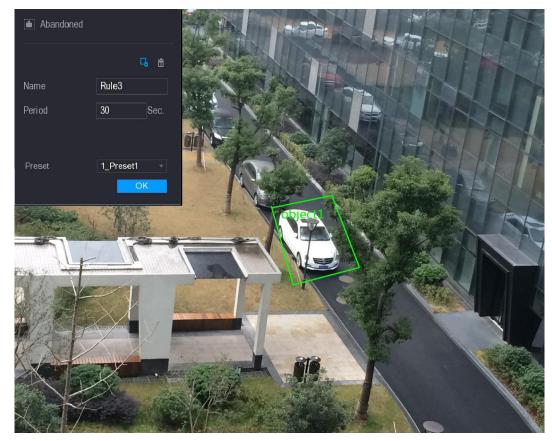


Figure 5-144

3) Configure the settings for the parameters of drawing rules. See Table 5-47.

Parameter Description

Parameter	Description
Name	Enter the customized rule name.
Period	Configure the minimum time period for activating alarms by
Penou	detecting the abandoned objects.
Filtering Target	Click to draw areas to filter the target. NOTE You can configure two filtering targets (maximum size and minimum size). When the target that is crossing the tripwire is smaller than the minimum size or larger than the maximum size, no alarms will be activated. The maximum size should be larger than the minimum size.
Preset	In the Preset list, select the preset that you want to configure the
110000	rule for.

- 4) Drag to draw an area.
- 5) Click **OK** to save the settings.
- Step 3 Click to set the actions to be triggered. For details, see "5.11.1.1 Configuring Tripwire Rules."
- <u>Step 4</u> Select the **Enable** check box, and then click **Apply**.

The abandoned object detecting function is active. When the object is placed in the defined detection area for more than the set time, the system activates alarms.

## 5.11.1.4 Configuring Missing Rules

When the target is taken away from the defined area exceeds the set time, the system activates alarms.

<u>Step 1</u> On the rule line that you added, in the **Type** list, select **Missing**.

The **Missing** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-145.

j⊛j ivs							LIVE	
SMART SEARCH	Channe		1					
> INTELL SETTING	Cnanne		1					
	4	Enable	Name	Туре	Draw	Trigger	Delete	Р
			Rule1	Tripwire 🔻		\$		
			Rule2	Intrusion 🔻	ľ	\$		
	3		Rule3	Abandoned 🔻	ľ	*	ā	
	4			Missing 🔻				
							Adc	
							Apply	Back

Figure 5-145

Step 2 Draw an area.

- 1) In the **Channel** list, select the channel that you want to configure the rules for.
- 2) Click

The monitoring screen to configure the missing rules is displayed. See Figure 5-146 for analog camera and the IP camera without preset, and see Figure 5-147 for IP camera with preset.

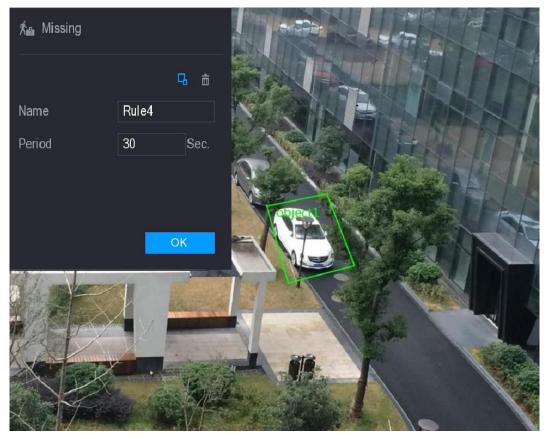


Figure 5-146

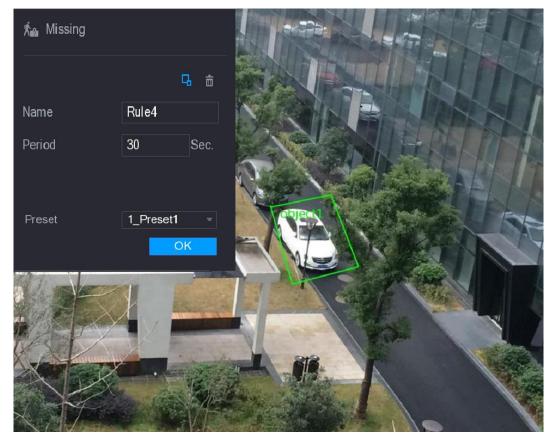


Figure 5-147

3) Configure the settings for the parameters of drawing rules. See Table 5-48.

Parameter Description

Description
Enter the customized rule name.
Configure the minimum time period for activating alarms by
detecting the missing objects.
Click to draw areas to filter the target. NOTE You can configure two filtering targets (maximum size and minimum size). When the target that is crossing the tripwire is smaller than the minimum size or larger than the maximum size, no alarms will be activated. The maximum size should be larger than the minimum size.
In the <b>Preset</b> list, select the preset that you want to configure the
rule for.

- 4) Drag to draw an area.
- 5) Click **OK** to save the settings.
- Step 3 Click to set the actions to be triggered. For details, see "5.11.1.1 Configuring Tripwire Rules."
- <u>Step 4</u> Select the **Enable** check box, and then click **Apply**. The missing object detecting function is active. When the target is taken away from the

defined area exceeds the set time, the system activates alarms.

# 5.11.2 Enabling the Intelligent Settings for IP Camera

#### D NOTE

- Not all IP cameras support this function.
- The interface might be different depending on the connected IP camera.

After configuring the intelligent settings for IP cameras (refer to "5.11.1 Configuring Intelligent Settings"), you still need to enable to apply the configurations. For example, you have configured the intelligent settings for IP camera as displayed in Figure 5-148, and then click **Apply** to save the settings.

<u>,</u> ⊛_ıvs									
> INTELL SETTING	Channel		6						
SMART PLAN									
	2	Туре		Draw	Trigger	Delete	Preset		
		Tripwire			¢				
		Intrusion		ï	•	ŵ	1		
								Ad	d
	Refresh						Appl	y	Back

Figure 5-148

Step 1 Click SMART PLAN.

The **SMART PLAN** interface is displayed.

- <u>Step 2</u> In the **Channel** list, select the IP camera channel that you have configured the intelligent settings.
  - For the IP camera with preset, see Figure 5-149.

🔉 Ivs			
INTELL SETTING	Channel 6	✓ Preset 1_Preset1	→ Add
> SMART PLAN			✓ Add
	0 Preset	Delete	
	Refresh		Apply Back

Figure 5-149

• For the IP camera without preset, see Figure 5-150.

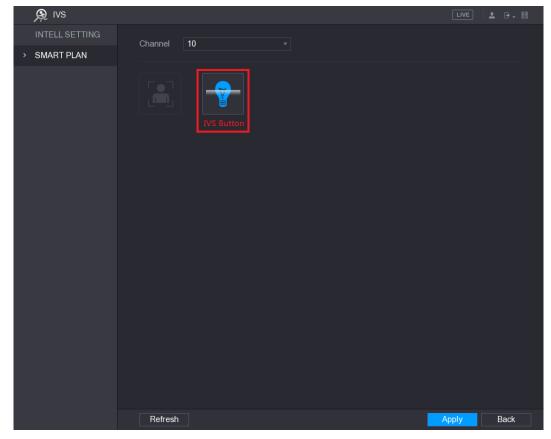


Figure 5-150

Step 3 Enable the IVS function.

- For the IP camera with preset, do the following:
- 1) In the **Preset** list, select **1\_Preset1**.

All the presets that the IP camera has are displayed in the **Preset** list, and you just need to select the preset that you have configured the intelligent settings as shown in Figure 5-148.

2) Click Add.

The selected preset is displayed in the table and the IVS button and Face Detect button are displayed. See Figure 5-151.

😥 ivs			
INTELL SETTING	Channel 6	✓ Preset 1_Preset1	✓ Add
> SMART PLAN			
	1 Preset	Delete	
	IVS button		
	Refresh		Apply Back

Figure 5-151

- 3) Select the line of **1\_Preset1**.
- 4) Click IVS button to enable the intelligent settings to preset 1. The buttons is displayed in blue.
- 5) Click **Apply** to complete the settings.
- For the IP camera without preset, click the IVS button and then click **Apply** to complete the settings.

# 5.11.3 Using Smart Search

You can search for the intelligent events and display in graph or list.

Step 1 Select Main Menu > IVS > SMART SEARCH.

The **SMART SEARCH** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-152.

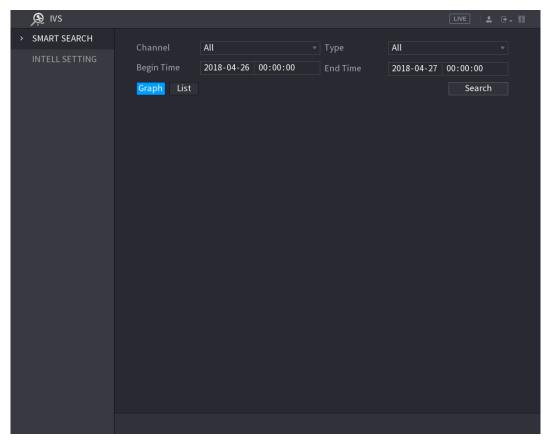


Figure 5-152

- <u>Step 2</u> In the **Channel** list, select the channel that you want to search for the events.
- <u>Step 3</u> In the **Type** list, select the event type that you want to search.
- <u>Step 4</u> In the **Begin Time** box and **End Time** box, enter the date and time.
- <u>Step 5</u> Select the display mode of the search results by clicking **Graph** or **List**.
- Step 6 Click Search.

The results that satisfy the searching conditions are displayed. See Figure 5-153 and Figure 5-154.

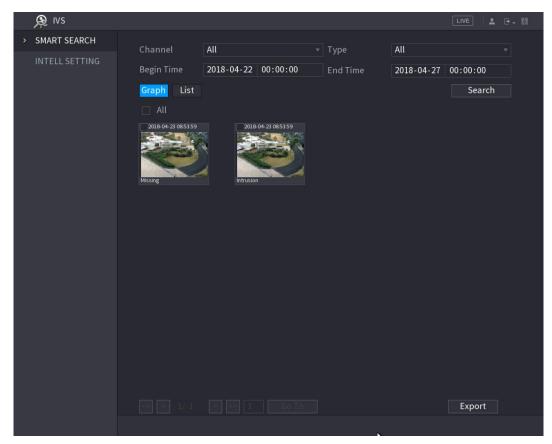
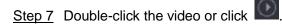


Figure 5-153

j⊛j ivs					LIVE 🕹 🕒	- 80
> SMART SEARCH	Channel	All		All		
INTELL SETTING	Begin Time	2018-04-22			00:00:00	
	Graph List				Search	
	2 Chan	inel Type	Begin Time	End Time	Playback	
		Missing	2018-04-23 08:53:59	2018-04-23 08:53:59		
		Intrusion	2018-04-23 08:53:59	2018-04-23 08:53:59		
					Export	

Figure 5-154



The video playback interface is displayed. See Figure 5-155.



Step 9 Click **Back** to stop the playback and return to the SMART SEARCH interface.

Click **Export** to export the recorded video files.

# 5.12 Configuring Face Detection

You can configure the face detection settings and search the detected faces in the defined time period.

- Not all models support this function.
- Only the analog channel 1 supports this function. The IP channel does not support this function.
- The IVS function and face detection function cannot be enabled at the same time.

# 5.12.1 Configuring Face Detection Settings

When the Device detects the human faces, the system activates alarms.

Step 1 Select Main Menu > FACE DETECT > PARAMETERS.

The Human Face interface is displayed. See Figure 5-156.

🚊 FACE DETECT				
SMART SEARCH	Human Face			
> PARAMETERS	Channel Enable	1 · ·	Rule	Setting
	Period Alarm Out Show Message Record Channel PTZ Tour Snapshot Video Matrix Voice Prompts	Setting Setting Alarm Upload 12345678 Setting 12345678 12345678 0 Buzzer Cog None	Latch	10 Sec. 10 Sec.
	Default			Apply Back

Figure 5-156

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the face detection parameters. See Table 5-49.

Parameter	Description					
	In the Channel list, select the channel that you want to configure					
	the face detection settings.					
Channel	D NOTE					
	Only the analog channel 1 supports this function.					
Enable	Enable or disable the face detection function.					
	Click Setting to draw areas to filter the target.					
	NOTE NOTE					
Rule	You can configure two filtering targets (maximum size and					
TUE	minimum size). When the target is smaller than the minimum size					
	or larger than the maximum size, no alarms will be activated. The					
	maximum size should be larger than the minimum size.					
	Define a period during which the detection is active.					
Period	For details, see "Setting Motion Detection Period" section in					
	"5.10.4.1 Configuring Motion Detect Settings."					
	Click <b>Setting</b> to display setting interface.					
	Enable alarm activation function. Select the alarm output port(s) to					
Alarm Out	which the peripheral alarm devices are connected. When an alarm					
	event occurs, the system links the peripheral alarm devices					
	connected to the selected output port.					
	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after					
Latch	the external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 0 seconds					
	to 300 seconds. If you enter 0, there will be no delay.					

Parameter	Description
Show Magazara	Select the <b>Show Message</b> check box to enable a pop-up message
Show Message	in your local host PC.
	Select the Alarm Upload check box to enable the system to
Alarm Upload	upload the alarm signal to the network (including alarm center)
	when an alarm event occurs.
	Select the Send Email check box to enable the system to send an
	email notification when an alarm event occurs.
Send Email	D NOTE
	To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in
	Main Menu > NETWORK > EMAIL.
	Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected
	channel(s) starts recording after an alarm event occurs.
Record Channel	₩ NOTE
	The recording for intelligence event and auto recording function
	must be enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded
	Video Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."
	Click <b>Setting</b> to display the PTZ interface.
	Enable PTZ activation function. For each PTZ camera, select the
PTZ	preset that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs.
	NOTE NOTE
	Face Detect can only link PTZ preset.
	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording
Post Record	after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to
	300 seconds.
Tour	Select the <b>Tour</b> check box to enable a tour of the selected
1001	channels.
	Select the <b>Snapshot</b> check box to take a snapshot of the selected
	channel.
	NOTE NOTE
	To use this function, make sure the following settings are
Snapshot	configured:
	• The snapshot function is enabled for motion detect alarms in
	Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot.
	• Select Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE > Snapshot, in
	the Mode list, select Human Face.
	Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event
	occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in
Video Matrix	"Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR."
	Not all models support this function.
Buzzer	Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.
	Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm
Log	log.

Parameter	Description
Voice Promote	Select to enable audio broadcast in response to a human face
Voice Prompts	detection event.

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

# 5.12.2 Searching for Detected Faces

#### 

To comply with relevant regulations, the faces have received fuzzy processing. <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > FACE DETECT > SMART SEARCH.

The **SMART SEARCH** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-157.

🚖 FACE DETECT						
> SMART SEARCH	Human Face					
PARAMETERS	Begin Time	2018 -05 -02	00:00:00	End Time	2018 - 05 - 03	00:00:00
	Graph List					Search

Figure 5-157

- <u>Step 2</u> In the **Begin Time** box and **End Time** box, enter the time.
- <u>Step 3</u> Select the display by clicking **Graph** or clicking **List**.
- Step 4 Click Search.

The faces searched in the defined period are displayed. See Figure 5-158 or Figure 5-159.

NOTE

Click **Export** to export the search results to the connected USB device.

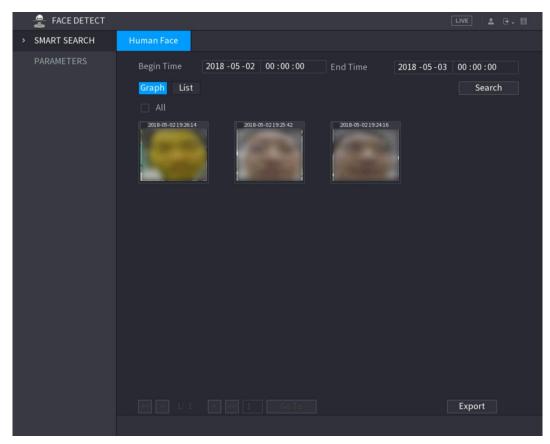


Figure 5-158

🚊 FACE DETECT					
> SMART SEARCH	Human Face				
PARAMETERS	Begin Time	2018 -05 -02	00:00:00 End	Time 2018 - 05 - 03	00 : 00 : 00
	Graph	ist			Search
	3 C	hannel Type	Begin Time	End Time	Playback
		21	t 2018-05-02 19:26:14		
	$\begin{array}{c} 1 \\ 2 \\ \end{array}$		t 2018-05-02 19:25:42		
			t 2018-05-02 19:24:16		
					Export

Figure 5-159

# 5.12.3 Playing the Detected Faces

<u>Step 1</u> On the displayed faces as shown in Figure 5-158, double-click on the face. The **VIDEO** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-160.

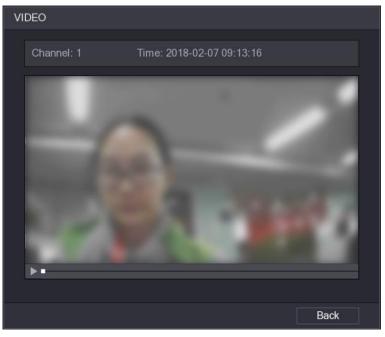


Figure 5-160

<u>Step 2</u> Click **L** to start playing the recorded detected face. <u>Step 3</u> Click **Back** to exit the playing interface and return to the faces displaying interface.

# 5.13 IoT Function

## 5.13.1 Configuring Sensor Settings

You can connect external sensors wirelessly through the Device with USB gateway or through connecting to a camera gateway. After connection, you can activate alarm events through external sensors.

### 5.13.1.1 Connecting Sensor through Device

 NOTE
 Only the Device with USB gateway supports this function.
 <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > IoT > MANAGER > Sensor Pairing. The Sensor Pairing interface is displayed. See Figure 5-161.

(	🕥 loT									LIVE	. د	→ <u>₽0</u>
	REALTIME DISPLAY	Se	nsor Pairing	Temp	erature/Hu	Wireless Dete	ector	Wireless Sire				
	SEARCH INFO		Access Type	All								
	MANAGER											
			1	Edit	Delete	Status	Access	Туре Ассе	ess Point	Туре		
											Add	

Figure 5-161

- <u>Step 2</u> In the Access Type list, select USB Gateway.
- Step 3 Click Add.

The Add interface is displayed. See Figure 5-162.

Add		
Access Type	USB Gateway	
Add Way	Pair	Pair
Access Point	USB Gateway-1	
Serial No.		
Name		
Туре		
Class		
Status		
		Back

Figure 5-162

Step 4 Click Pair.

The Device starts pairing with the sensor. After pairing is completed, see Figure 5-163.

Add		
Access Type	USB Gateway	
Add Way	Pair	Pair
Access Point	USB Gateway-1	
Serial No.	3J01837AAZ00008	
Name	USB-Panic Button-1	
Туре	Panic Button	
Class	Alarm In	
Status	Connected	
		Back

Figure 5-163

<u>Step 5</u> Click **Back** to exit the pairing interface.

The added sensor information is displayed. See Figure 5-164.

			- <b>,</b>	g			
Click to	modify the s	sensor nam	e; click	to de	elete sensc	or information.	
🕥 ІоТ							
REALTIME DISPLAY	Sensor Pairing	Temperature/Hu	Wireless Det	ector Wireles	s Siren		
SEARCH INFO	Access Type	USB Gateway					
> MANAGER						-	
	1 Edi		Status •	Access Type USB Gateway	Access Point USB-1	Type Panic Button	
	Refresh					Add	

Figure 5-164

## 5.13.1.2 Connecting Sensor through Camera with Gateway

NOTE

Only the camera with gateway supports this function.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > IoT > MANAGER > Sensor Pairing.

The Sensor Pairing interface is displayed. See Figure 5-165.

🕥 IoT		
REALTIME DISPLAY	Sensor Pairing Temperature/Hu Wireless Detector Wireless Siren	
SEARCH INFO	Access Type All *	
> MANAGER		
	1 Edit Delete Status Access Type Access Point	Туре
		Add

Figure 5-165

- <u>Step 2</u> In the Access Type list, select Camera Gateway.
- <u>Step 3</u> In the **Channel** list, select the channel that is connected to the camera.
- Step 4 Click Add.

The Add interface is displayed. See Figure 5-166.

Add		
Access Type	Camera Gateway	
Add Way	Pair	Pair
Access Point	Chn2-Air	
Serial No.		
Name		
Туре		
Class		
Status		
		Back

Figure 5-166

#### Step 5 Click Pair.

The Device starts pairing with the sensor. After pairing is completed, see Figure 5-167

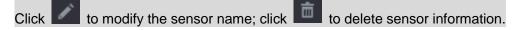
ing is completed									
Add									
Access Type	Camera Gateway								
Add Way	Pair		Pair						
Access Point	Chn6-Air								
Serial No.	3J01837AAZ00008								
Name	Chn6-Panic Button-1								
Туре	Panic Button								
Class	Alarm In								
Status	Connected								
			Back						

Figure 5-167

<u>Step 6</u> Click **Back** to exit the pairing interface.

The added sensor information is displayed. See Figure 5-168.

NOTE



	S IoT								LIVE	🖻 🚽 🔛
	REALTIME DISPLAY	Se	ensor Pairir	ig 1	lemperature/Hu	Wireless De	tector Wirel	ess Siren		
	SEARCH INFO		Access Ty	ре	Camera Gateway	/	Channel	All		
>	MANAGER									
				Edit	t Delete	Status	Access Type	Access Point	Туре	
							Camera Gat	. Chn2-Airfly	Panic Button	Cł
									Ado	

Figure 5-168

# 5.13.1.3 Configuring Alarm Linkage

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > IoT > MANAGER > Wireless Detector. The Wireless Detector interface is displayed. See Figure 5-169.

	🕥 ют								LIVE	🕂 🚽 🙃
	REALTIME DISPLAY	Se	ensor Pai	ring	Tempera	ture/Hu	Wireless Detector	Wireless Siren		
	SEARCH INFO		Access	Туре	All		<b>.</b>			
>	MANAGER									
					le Setting		Access Type	Access Point	Туре	
					•		Camera Gateway	Chn2-Airfly	Panic Buttor	
									Apply	Back

Figure 5-169

Step 2 In the Access Type list, select USB, Camera, or All.

Step 3 Click

The **Setting** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-116.

Setting				
Access Type	Camera Gateway	Access Point	Chn2-Airfly	
Туре	Panic Button	Name	Chn2-Panic Button-1	
Period	Setting	PTZ	Setting	
Alarm Out	Setting	Latch	10	Sec.
Post Record	10	Sec. Anti-Dither	5	Sec.
Record CH				
Snapshot				
Tour				
Voice Prompts	None			
More Setting	Setting			
Default			OK	Back

Figure 5-170

<u>Step 4</u> Configure the settings for alarm linkage. For details, see Table 5-50.

Parameter	Description
Name	Enter the customized alarm name.

Parameter	Description						
	Click Setting to display setting interface.						
Period	Define a period during which the motion detection is active. For details,						
Fenou	see "Setting Motion Detection Period" section in "5.10.4.1 Configuring						
	Motion Detect Settings."						
	Click <b>Setting</b> to display the PTZ interface.						
PTZ	Enable PTZ activation function. For each PTZ camera, select the						
	preset that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs.						
	Click Setting to display setting interface.						
	General Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the alarm devices						
	connected to the selected output port.						
Alarm Out	External Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the connected						
	alarm box.						
	Wireless Siren: Enable alarm activation through devices						
	connected by USB gateway or camera gateway.						
	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after the						
Latch	external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 0 seconds to 300						
	seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.						
	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after						
Post Record	the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300						
	seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.						
Anti-Dither	Configure the event detection lasting time. The system records only						
	one event during this period.						
	Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected channel(s)						
	starts recording after an alarm event occurs.						
Record Channel	NOTE NOTE						
	The recording for alarm and auto snapshot must be enabled. For						
	details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule"						
	and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."						
	Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected						
	channel.						
Snapshot	NOTE NOTE						
	To use this function, select Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE >						
	Snapshot, in the Mode list, select Event.						
Tour	Select the <b>Tour</b> check box to enable a tour of the selected channels.						
Voice Prompts	Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a local						
	alarm event.						

Parameter	Description
More Setting	<ul> <li>Show Message: Select the Show Message check box to enable a pop-up message in your local host PC.</li> <li>Buzzer: Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.</li> <li>Video Matrix: Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in "Main Menu &gt; DISPLAY &gt; TOUR."</li> <li>NOTE</li> <li>Not all models support this function.</li> <li>Send Email: Enable the system to send an email notification when an alarm event occurs.</li> <li>NOTE</li> <li>To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in Main Menu &gt; NETWORK &gt; EMAIL.</li> <li>Log: Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log</li> </ul>
	Table 5-50

<u>Step 5</u> Click **OK** to save the settings.

<u>Step 6</u> On the **Wireless Detector** interface, click **Apply** to complete the settings.

# 5.13.2 Configuring Temperature and Humidity Camera

You can view, search and export the temperature and humidity data of camera with such sensors and configure the alarm event settings.

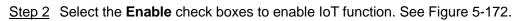
To use this function, please make sure there is at least one camera with temperature and humidity sensor has been connected to the Device.

### 5.13.2.1 Enabling Detecting Function

You should enable the IoT function the first time when you enter this interface. <u>Step 1</u> On the main menu, select **IoT > MANAGER > Temperature/Humidity**. The **Temperature/Humidity** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-171.

🕥 loT						
REALTIME DISPLAY	Sensor Pairin	g Tempera	ature/Hu V	Vireless Detector	Wireless Siren	
SEARCH INFO	2	Enable	Setting	Access Point	Туре	Detect Position Nam
> MANAGER			\$	Chn 6	Temperature	Chn6-Temperature-
			\$	Chn 6	Humidity	Chn6-Humidity-1

Figure 5-171



🕥 ІоТ					LIVE 💄 🕞 🗸 🧱
REALTIME DISPLAY	Sensor Pairing	Temperature/Hu	Wireless Detector	Wireless Siren	
SEARCH INFO	2	Enable Setting	Access Point	Туре	Detect Position Nam
> MANAGER		<b>⊻ ‡</b>	Chn 6	Temperature	Chn6-Temperature-
	2	•			Chn6-Humidity-1



The Device starts detecting the temperature and humidity data from the camera and display on the **Realtime Display** interface.

## 5.13.2.2 Viewing Temperature and Humidity Data

You can view the temperature and humidity data on the **Realtime Display** interface after the IoT function is enabled.

In the **Refresh Interval** box, select data refresh interval. For example, you can select **5 Sec**. You can also display the temperature and humidity data in graphical way by selecting the **Display Graph** check box to. See Figure 5-173 for humidity data in graphical way.

	🕥 loT					
>	REALTIME DISPLAY					
	SEARCH INFO	Refresh Interval	5 Sec.			
		Display Graph	Access Point	Туре	Detect Position Name	Current Valu
	MANAGER		Chn 6	Temperature	Chn6-Temperature-1	26°C
						30%RH
		4				
		Temperature Chart	Humidity Chart			
		(%RH) 100				<ul> <li>Chn6-Humidity-1</li> </ul>
		80				
						P***
		50				
		40 30				
		20				
		Clear				ocked Export

Figure 5-173

NOTE Click **Clear** to delete the data.

## 5.13.2.3 Exporting Temperature and Humidity Data

You can export the temperature and humidity data in .BMP format. Take exporting humidity data as an example.

Step 1 Prepare a USB device and plug it into the Device.

Step 2 On the Realtime Display interface, click the Humidity tab. See Figure 5-174.

S IoT					
REALTIME DISPLAY	Refresh Interval	5 Sec.			
SEARCH INFO					0
MANAGER	Display Graph	Access Point	Туре	Detect Position Name	Current Valu
MANAGER		Chn 6	Temperature	Chn6-Temperature-1	26°C
					30% RH
	Temperature Chart	Humidity Chart			
	(%RH) 100				<ul> <li>Chn6-Humidity-1</li> </ul>
					and the second
	Clear			L	ocked Export

Figure 5-174

- <u>Step 3</u> Click **Locked** to lock the data. The export button is enabled.
- Step 4 Click **Export**. The system starts exporting the data.

After exporting is finished, a **Message** dialog box is displayed.

Step 5 Click OK.

You can find the exported data on your USB device.

### 5.13.2.4 Configuring Alarm Linkage

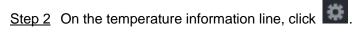
You can configure alarm linkage settings for temperature and humidity data.

#### 5.13.2.4.1 Configuring Alarm Linkage for Temperature Data

<u>Step 1</u> On the main interface, select **IoT > MANAGER > Temperature/Humidity**. The **Temperature/Humidity** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-175.

🕥 ΙοΤ						
REALTIME DISPLAY	Sensor Pairin	g Temper	ature/Hu V	Vireless Detector	Wireless Siren	
SEARCH INFO	2	Enable	Setting	Access Point	Туре	Detect Position Nam
> MANAGER			¢	Chn 6	Temperature	Chn6-Temperature-
			\$	Chn 6	Humidity	Chn6-Humidity-1

Figure 5-175



The Setting interface is displayed. See Figure 5-176.

Setting					
Access Point			Туре		
Detect Position Name	Chn6-Temperature-1		Preview Channel	6	
Event Type	High		Upper Limit	26 °C Enable	
Period	Setting		PTZ	Setting	
Alarm Out	Setting		Latch	10	Sec.
Post Record	10	Sec	. Anti-Dither	5	Sec.
Record CH					
Snapshot					
Tour					
Voice Prompts	None				
More Setting	Setting				
Default				Save B	lack

Figure 5-176

<u>Step 3</u> Configure the settings for alarm linkage. See Table 5-51.

Parameter	Description	
Access Point	Indicates the channel that the camera is connected to.	

Parameter	Description				
Туре	Temperature by default.				
Detect Position Name	Set the detect position name.				
Preview Channel	Select the channel that you want to preview to help monitor the channel of access point. This channel could be the channel of access point or any other channels according to your actual situation.				
Event Type	Select event type as <b>High</b> or <b>Low</b> , and set the upper and low temperature limit respectively. For example, select event type as				
Upper Limit	<b>High</b> and set upper limit as <b>28</b> , the alarm occurs when the temperature reaches 28°C.				
Enable	Enable the alarm function.				
Period	Define a period during which the alarm setting is active. For more information about setting the period, see "5.10.4.1 Configuring Motion Detect Settings."				
Alarm Out	<ul> <li>Click Setting to display setting interface.</li> <li>General Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the alarm devices connected to the selected output port.</li> <li>External Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the connected alarm box.</li> <li>Wireless Siren: Enable alarm activation through devices connected by USB gateway or camera gateway.</li> </ul>				
PTZ	Enable PTZ activation function. Click <b>Setting</b> to display the PTZ interface. For each PTZ camera, select the preset, tour, or pattern that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs.				
Latch	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after the external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 0 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds. If you enter 0, there will be no delay.				
Post Record	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.				
Anti-Dither	Configure the event detection lasting time. The system records only one event during this period.				
Snapshot	Select the check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel. NOTE To use this function, make sure the snapshot is enabled motion detect alarms in Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot.				

Parameter	Description				
	Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected				
	channel(s) starts recording after an alarm occurs.				
Record CH					
	The recording for IoT alarms and auto recording function must be				
	enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video				
	Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."				
	Select the check box to enable a tour of the selected channels.				
Tour					
IOUr	To use this function, make sure the tour is enabled and configured				
	in Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR.				
Voice Prompts	Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a				
	temperature alarm event.				
	• Show Message: Select the <b>Show Message</b> check box to				
	enable a pop-up message in your local host PC.				
	• Buzzer: Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.				
	• Video Matrix: Select the check box to enable the function.				
	When an alarm event occurs, the video output port outputs the				
	settings configured in "Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR."				
Mana Oattina					
More Setting	Not all models support this function.				
	Send Email: Enable the system to send an email notification				
	when an alarm event occurs.				
	To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in				
	Main Menu > NETWORK > EMAIL.				
	• Log: Select the check box to enable the Device to record a				
	local alarm log.				

<u>Step 4</u> Click **Save** to save the settings.

#### 5.13.2.4.2 Configuring Alarm Settings for Humidity Data

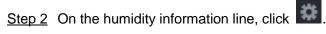
You can configure the alarm event by setting the humidity data.

<u>Step 1</u> On the main interface, select **IoT > MANAGER > Temperature/Humidity**.

The **Temperature/Humidity** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-177.

🕥 loT						
REALTIME DISPLAY	Sensor Pairir	ig Temper	ature/Hu V	Vireless Detector	Wireless Siren	
SEARCH INFO	2	Enable	Setting	Access Point	Туре	Detect Position Nam
> MANAGER			\$	Chn 6	Temperature	Chn6-Temperature-
			\$	Chn 6	Humidity	Chn6-Humidity-1

Figure 5-177



The Setting interface is displayed. See Figure 5-178.

Setting					
Access Point			Туре		
Detect Position Name	Chn6-Humidity-1		Preview Channel	6	
Event Type	High Humidity		Upper Limit	60 %RH Enable	
Period	Setting		PTZ	Setting	
Alarm Out	Setting		Latch	10	Sec.
Post Record	10	Sec.	Anti-Dither	5	Sec.
Record CH					
Snapshot					
Tour					
Voice Prompts	None				
More Setting	Setting				
Default				Save Ba	ck

Figure 5-178

<u>Step 3</u> Configure the settings for the following parameters. See Table 5-52.

Parameter	Description
Access Point	Indicates the channel that the camera is connected to.

Parameter	Description				
Туре	Humidity by default.				
Detect Position Name	Set the detect position name.				
Preview Channel	Select the channel that you want to preview to help monitor the channel of access point. This channel could be the channel of access point or any other channels according to your actual situation.				
Event Type	Select event type as <b>High Humidity</b> or <b>Low Humidity</b> , and set the upper and low humidity limit respectively. For example, select				
Upper Limit	event type as <b>High Humidity</b> and set upper limit as <b>60</b> , the alarm occurs when the humidity reaches 60%RH.				
Enable	Enable the alarm function.				
Period	Define a period during which the alarm setting is active. For more information about setting the period, see "5.10.4.1 Configuring Motion Detect Settings."				
Alarm Out	<ul> <li>Click Setting to display setting interface.</li> <li>General Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the alarm devices connected to the selected output port.</li> <li>External Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the connected alarm box.</li> <li>Wireless Siren: Enable alarm activation through devices connected by USB gateway or camera gateway.</li> </ul>				
PTZ	Enable PTZ activation function. Click <b>Setting</b> to display the PTZ interface. For each PTZ camera, select the preset, tour, or pattern that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs.				
Latch	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after the external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 0 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds. If you enter 0, there will be no delay.				
Post Record	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.				
Anti-Dither	Configure the event detection lasting time. The system records only one event during this period.				
Snapshot	Select the check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel. NOTE To use this function, make sure the snapshot is enabled motion detect alarms in Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot.				

Parameter	Description
	Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected
	channel(s) starts recording after an alarm occurs.
Record CH	D NOTE
	The recording for IoT alarms and auto recording function must be
	enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video
	Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."
	Select the check box to enable a tour of the selected channels.
Tour	D NOTE
Tour	To use this function, make sure the tour is enabled and configured
	in Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR.
Voice Prompts	Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a
	temperature alarm event.
	• Show Message: Select the <b>Show Message</b> check box to
	enable a pop-up message in your local host PC.
	• Buzzer: Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.
	• Video Matrix: Select the check box to enable the function.
	When an alarm event occurs, the video output port outputs the
	settings configured in "Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR."
Mana Oattian	D NOTE
More Setting	Not all models support this function.
	Send Email: Enable the system to send an email notification
	when an alarm event occurs.
	To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in
	Main Menu > NETWORK > EMAIL.
	• Log: Select the check box to enable the Device to record a
	local alarm log

Table 5-52

<u>Step 4</u> Click **Save** to save the settings.

## 5.13.2.5 Searching IoT Information

You can search and backup all your IoT data.

To back up the data, you should prepare a USB device and plug it into the Device. <u>Step 1</u> On the main interface, select **IoT > SEARCH INFO**. See Figure 5-179.

0 Time Access Point Type Detect Position Name 	I	S IoT					LIVE	1 A G.	90 10
> SEARCH INFO       Type       All       Status       All         MANAGER       2017-11-06       00:00:00       End Time       2017-12-06       00:00:00         Start Time       2017-11-06       00:00:00       End Time       2017-12-06       00:00:00         Image: Start Time       2017-11-06       00:00:00       End Time       2017-12-06       00:00:00         Image: Start Time       2017-11-06       00:00:00       End Time       2017-12-06       00:00:00         Image: Start Time       2017-11-06       00:00:00       End Time       2017-12-06       00:00:00         Image: Start Time       2017-11-06       00:00:00       End Time       2017-12-06       00:00:00         Image: Start Time       2017-11-06       00:00:00       End Time       2017-12-06       00:00:00         Image: Start Time       2017-12-06       00:00:00       Image: Start Time       Image: Start Time       2017-12-06       00:00:00         Image: Start Time         Image: Start Time       Image: Start Time       Image: Start Time       Image: Start Time       Image: Start Time       Image: Start Time       Image: Start Time <t< td=""><td></td><td>REALTIME DISPLAY</td><td>Access Point</td><td>1</td><td></td><td>Display Type</td><td>List</td><td></td><td></td></t<>		REALTIME DISPLAY	Access Point	1		Display Type	List		
MANAGER       Start Time       2017-11-06       00:00:00       End Time       2017-12-06       00:00:00       Search         0       Time       Access Point       Type       Detect Position Name         0       Time       Access Point       Type       Detect Position Name         0       Time       Access Point       Type       Detect Position Name	>	SEARCH INFO							
		MANAGER							
				Time	Access Point	Туре	Detect Position	Name	С
				III > >> 1				Backup	

Figure 5-179

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the parameters settings. See Table 5-53.

Parameter	Description
Access Point	Indicates the channel that the camera is connected to.
Display Type	In the Display Type list, select List or Graph.
Select the information type that you want to search. You can se	
Туре	Humidity or Temperature.
	Select the information state that you want to search.
Status	This option is available when you select List in the Display Type
	list.
Start Time	Enter the start time and end time for the information that you want
End Time	to search.

Table 5-53

#### Step 3 Click Search.

The system starts search according to your parameters settings. After searching is finished, the result displays.

• For the data displayed in list, see Figure 5-180.

Click Go To to switch result pages.

🕥 loT						LIVE	🔔 🕒 - 🖽
REALTIME DISPLAY	Access P	aint	1		Display Type	List	
SEARCH INFO	Access P	oint			Display Type	List	
	Туре		All		Status	All	
MANAGER	Start Time		2017-11-06	00:00:00	End Time	2017-12-06 00:00	:00
							Search
	120		Time	Access Point	Туре	Detect Position Na	ame 🔺
			1-07 21:13:58	Chn 1	Humidity	Chn1-Humidity-	
		2017-1	1-07 21:14:00	Chn 1	Temperature	Chn1-Temperatur	
		2017-11	1-07 21:14:01	Chn 1	Humidity	Chn1-Humidity-	
		2017-11	1-07 21:14:09	Chn 1	Temperature	Chn1-Temperatur	
		2017-1	1-07 21:14:10	Chn 1	Humidity	Chn1-Humidity-	
		2017-1	1-07 21:14:14	Chn 1	Humidity	Chn1-Humidity-	
		2017-11	1-07 21:14:23	Chn 1	Humidity	Chn1-Humidity-	
		2017-11	1-07 21:16:04	Chn 1	Temperature	Chn1-Temperatur	
		2017-11	1-07 21:16:06	Chn 1	Temperature	Chn1-Temperatur	
		2017-11	1-07 21:16:07	Chn 1	Humidity	Chn1-Humidity-	
	11	2017-11	1-07 21:16:16	Chn 1	Temperature	Chn1-Temperatur	
	12	2017-11	1-07 21:16:17	Chn 1	Humidity	Chn1-Humidity-	
	13	2017-1	1-07 21:16:26	Chn 1	Temperature	Chn1-Temperatur	
	14	2017-11	1-07 21:16:27	Chn 1	Humidity	Chn1-Humidity-	
		2017-11	1-07 21:16:36	Chn 1	Temperature	Chn1-Temperatur	
							•
		1/85	> >> 1	Go To			Backup

Figure 5-180

• For the data displayed in graph, see Figure 5-181.

🕥 loT					LIVE	
REALTIME DISPLAY	Access Point	1		Display Type	Graph	
> SEARCH INFO	Туре	Humidity			Citapii	
MANAGER	Start Time	2017-11-06	00:00:00	End Time	2017-12-06 00:	00:00 Search
	(%RH) 100 90 80 70 60				◆ Chn1-H	
	50 40 30 20 10 0					
						Backup



<u>Step 4</u> Click **Backup**. The system starts exporting the data.

After exporting is finished, a **Message** dialog box is displayed.

Step 5 Click OK.

You can find the exported data on your USB device.

## 5.13.3 Configuring Wireless Siren

You can connect the wireless siren to the Device, when there is an alarm event activated on the Device, the wireless siren generate alarms.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > IoT > MANAGER > Wireless Siren.

The **Wireless Siren** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-182.

	🕥 loT					LIVE	L ⊕ - ₽	0
	REALTIME DISPLAY	Sensor Pairing	Temperature/Hu	Wireless Detector	Wireless Siren			
	SEARCH INFO	USB Gateway						
>	MANAGER	Mode						
		Auto						
		Manual						
		Stop						
		Camera Gatev	vay					
		Mode	All 1	234567				
		Auto						
		Manual						
		Stop						
		Alarm Release	OK					
						Apply	Bac	ĸ

Figure 5-182

Step 2 Configure the settings for the wireless alarm output. For details, see Table 5-54.

Parameter	Description				
	• Auto: Automatically activate alarm if the alarm output function				
	for wireless siren is enabled for specific events. For example, if				
USB Gateway,	you want to enable the alarm output through wireless siren for				
Camera Gateway	motion detection, see "Alarm Output" parameter in Table 5-39.				
	Manual: Activate alarm immediately.				
	• Stop: Do not activate alarm.				
Alarm Release	Click OK to clear all alarm output status of wireless siren.				
	<b>—</b> · · · <b>—</b> - ·				

Table 5-54

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to save the settings.

# 5.14 Configuring POS Settings

You can connect the Device to the POS (Point of Sale) machine and receive the information from it. This function applies to the scenarios such as supermarket POS machine. After connection is established, the Device can access the POS information and display the overlaid text in the channel window.

#### NOTE

Playing POS information in the local playback and viewing the POS information in the live view screen only support single-channel mode. Displaying monitoring screen and playing back in the web support multi-channel mode.

## 5.14.1 Searching the Transaction Records

			5			
POS					LIVE	
> POS SEARCH	Transaction No.			Search		
POS SETUP	Start Time	2017 - 10 - 08	00 : 00 : 00			
	End Time	2017 - 11 - 07	20 : 20 : 55			
	0 Tr	ransaction Time	Ti	ransaction No.	Play	Details
	< 0/0					

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > POS > POS SEARCH.

The **POS SEARCH** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-183.

Figure 5-183

- <u>Step 2</u> In the **Transaction No.** list, enter the transaction number on your receipt printed out by POS machine.
- <u>Step 3</u> In the **Start Time** box and **End Time** box, enter the time period that you want to search the POS transaction information.
- Step 4 Click Search.

The searched transaction results display in the table.

## 5.14.2 Configuring POS Settings

#### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > POS > POS SETUP. The POS SETUP interface is displayed. See Figure 5-184.

POS					LIVE	
POS SEARCH	POS Name	pos1	▼ <b>/</b>	Enable		
> POS SETUP		post				
				Record CH	\$	
				Privacy Setup	\$	
				Protocol Type	POS	
				Connect Type	TCP	•
				Character Encoding	UTF-8	
				Overlay Mode	TURN	
				Network time out	100	
				Time Display	120	
				Font Size	Medium	
				COLOR		
				POS Info		
				Transaction Start		
				Transaction End		
				Line Delimiter		
	Default				Apply	Back

Figure 5-184

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the POS parameters. See Table 5-55.

Parameter	Description					
	In the POS Name list, select the POS machine that you want to					
POS Name	configures settings for. Click to modify the POS name.					
FUS Name	NOTE NOTE					
	The POS name supports 21 Chinese characters or 63 English					
	characters.					
Enable	Enable the POS function.					
	Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected					
	channel(s) starts recording after an alarm occurs.					
Record CH	NOTE NOTE					
	The recording for POS alarms and auto recording function must					
	be enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video					
	Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."					
Privacy Setup	Enter the privacy content.					
Protocol Type	Select <b>POS</b> by default. Different machine corresponds to different					
	protocol.					

Parameter	Description			
Connect Type	In the <b>Connect Type</b> list, select the connection protocol type. Click , the IP Address interface is displayed.			
	In the <b>Source IP</b> box, enter the IP address (the machine that is			
	connected to the Device) that sends messages.			
Convert	Select a character encoding mode.			
Overlay	In the <b>Overlay</b> list, Select <b>Turn</b> or <b>ROLL</b> .			
	When the network is not working correctly and cannot be			
Notwork time out	recovered after the entered timeout limit, the POS information will			
Network time out	not display normally. After the network is recovered, the latest			
	POS information will be displayed.			
	Enter the time that how long you want to keep the POS			
Time Display	information displaying. For example, enter 5, the POS information			
	disappear from the screen after 5 seconds.			
Font Size	In the Font Size list, select Small, Medium, or Big as the text			
T UNIC SIZE	size of POS information			
COLOR	In the color bar, click to select the color for the text size of POS			
COLOR	information.			
POS Info	Enable the POS Info function, the POS information displays in the			
	live view screen.			
Transaction Start	Enter the transaction start character and end character.			
Transaction End				
Line Delimiter	Enter the line delimiter that you want to use.			
	Table 5-55			

Table 5-55

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

# 5.15 Configuring Backup Settings

## 5.15.1 Finding USB Device

When you inset a USB storage device into the USB port of the Device, the Device detects the USB storage device and pops up "Find USB device" interface, which provides you a shortcut to perform backup and upgrading operations. See Figure 5-185.

For details, see "5.15.2 Backing up Files", "5.21.2 Viewing Log Information", "5.20.4 Exporting and Importing System Settings", and "5.20.6 Upgrading the Device."

Find USB device.					
	sda5(USB DISK) 15.60 GB/15.60 GB(Free/Total)				
File Backu	p Log Backup				
Config Back	up System Upgrade				

Figure 5-185

## 5.15.2 Backing up Files

You can back up the recorded videos and snapshots.

#### Step 1 Select Main Menu > BACKUP.

The **BACKUP** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-186.

🗘 ВАСКИР					[	LIVE	1 🕞 🗸 🛤
> BACKUP	Device Name Path	sda5(USB [	DISK)	Format Browse	15.60 GB/15.60	) GB(Fre	e/Total)
	Record CH	1		Туре	All		
	Start Time	2017-11-06	6 00:00:00	End Time	2017-11-06	09:24:3	36
	File Format	DAV			Search		Clear
	0 Cha	nnel Type	Start Time	End Time	Size(KB		
	0.00 KB(Space	Needed)					Backup

Figure 5-186

Step 2	Configure the	settings for the	backup parameters.	See Table 5-56.
	0	0		

Parameter	Description
Device Norme	In the Device Name list, select the device that you want to back up
Device Name	the files to.

Parameter	Description					
	Click Format, the Format interface is displayed.					
	• If the capacity of external storage device is less than 2TB, you					
Format	can select FAT32 or NTFS to format it.					
	If the capacity of external storage device is equal to or more					
	than 2TB, you can only select NTFS to format it.					
Path	Click Browse, the Browse interface is displayed. Select the route					
Faur	where you want to search for the files.					
Record CH	In the Record CH list, select the channel where you want to search					
Record CH	for the files.					
Туре	In the <b>Type</b> list, select the file type that you want to search.					
Start Time	Enter the start time and end time for the files that you want to					
End Time	search.					
File Format	In the File Format list, select the file format as DAV or MP4 that					
File Format	you want to search.					
<b>—</b> · · · <b>—</b> - · ·						

Table 5-56

- <u>Step 3</u> Click **Search** to search the files that meet the configured settings. The searched results will display in the table.
- <u>Step 4</u> Select the files that you want to back up.
- <u>Step 5</u> Click **Backup** to back up the selected files to the configured path. NOTE

Click Clear to remove all the searched results.

# 5.16 Network Management

## 5.16.1 Configuring Network Settings

You can ensure the network interworking between the Device and other devices through configuring the network settings.

## 5.16.1.1 Configuring TCP/IP Settings

You can configure the settings for the Device such as IP address, DNS according to the networking plan.

Select **Main Menu > NETWORK > TCP/IP**, the **TCP/IP** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-187. For details about parameter settings, see "5.1.4.4 Configuring Network Settings."

🚱 NETWORK			 LIVE
> TCP/IP	IP Version	IPv4	
CONNECTION	MAC Address	34:85:89:38:A3:B9	
Wi-Fi	DHCP		
3G/4G	IP Address	192 . 168 . 3 . 113	
PPPoE	Subnet Mask	255 255 0 0	
DDNS	Default Gateway	192 . 168 . 0 . 1	
EMAIL	DNS DHCP		
UPnP	Preferred DNS	8.8.8.8	
SNMP	Alternate DNS	8.8.4.4	
MULTICAST			
REGISTER	MTU	1500	
ALARM CENTER			
P2P			
			_
	Test		Apply

Figure 5-187

## 5.16.1.2 Configuring Port Settings

You can configure the maximum connection accessing the Device from Client such as WEB, Platform, and Mobile Phone and configure each port settings.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > NETWORK > CONNECTION. The CONNECTION interface is displayed. See Figure 5-188.

	🚱 NETWORK				
	TCP/IP	Max Connection	128	( 0 -128 )	
>	CONNECTION	TCP Port	37777	( 1025 - 65535 )	
	Wi-Fi	UDP Port	37778	( 1025 - 65535 )	
	3G/4G	HTTP Port	80	( 1 - 65535 )	
	PPPoE	RTSP Port	554	( 1 - 65535 )	
	DDNS	POS Port	38800	( 1025 - 65535 )	
	EMAIL	HTTPS Enable			
	UPnP	HTTPS Port	443	(1-65535)	
	SNMP				
	MULTICAST				
	REGISTER				
	ALARM CENTER				
	P2P				
					Apply Back

Figure 5-188

The connection parameters except Max Connection cannot take effects until the Device has been restarted.

Parameter Description					
	The allowable maximum clients accessing the Device at the same				
Max Connection	ime, such as WEB, Platform, and Mobile Phone.				
	Select a value between 1 and 128. The default value setting is 128.				
TCP Port	The default value setting is 37777. You can enter the value				
TOPFOIL	according to your actual situation.				
UDP Port	The default value setting is 37778. You can enter the value				
ODP POIL	according to your actual situation.				
	The default value setting is 80. You can enter the value according				
HTTP Port	to your actual situation.				
	If you enter other value, for example, 70, and then you should enter				
	70 after the IP address when logging in the Device by browser.				
RTSP Port	The default value setting is 554. You can enter the value according				
RISP FUIL	to your actual situation.				
POS Port	Data transmission. The value range is from 1 through 65535. The				
P05 P01	default value is 38800.				
HTTPS Enable	Enable HTTPS.				
HTTPS Port	HTTPS communication port. The default value setting is 443. You				
	can enter the value according to your actual situation.				

Table 5-57

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

### 5.16.1.3 Configuring Wi-Fi Connection Settings

You can make wireless connection between the Device and the other devices in the same network through Wi-Fi settings, facilitating the devices connection and mobility.

LLI N	OTE
-------	-----

Only the Device with Wi-Fi module supports this function.

#### Step 1 Select Main Menu > NETWORK > Wi-Fi.

The Wi-Fi interface is displayed. See Figure 5-189.

					-							
	🚱 NETWORK							LIVE	•	₽.	0 Q	
	TCP/IP	Ņ	Wi-Fi Auto C	Connect								
	CONNECTION											
>	Wi-Fi		0	SSID	Signal Inte	ensity	Wi-Fi Working Info					
	3G/4G			COID	orginarina	JHORY	Current Hotspot	No Connect	on			
	PPPoE								UI			
	DDNS						IP Address					
	EMAIL						Subnet Mask					
	UPnP						Default Gateway					
	SNMP											
	MULTICAST											
	REGISTER											
	ALARM CENTER											
	P2P											
			Refresh					Apply		Ba	CK	

Figure 5-189

Step 2 Configure the settings for the Wi-Fi connection parameters. See Table 5-58.

Parameter	Description				
	Enable Wi-Fi Auto Connect.				
Wi-Fi Auto Connect	After the Device is restarted, it will automatically connect to the				
	nearest hotspot that had been connected successfully.				
Refresh	Refresh the hotspot list. The self-adaption function such as adding				
Kenesh	password is supported if such setting was once configured.				
	In the hotpots list, select a hotspot, and then click <b>Connect</b> .				
	To reconnect the same hotspot, disconnect first and then				
Connect	reconnect.				
	To connect to other hotspot, disconnect from the current				
	connected hotspot first, and then connect to the other hotspot.				
Disconnect	To disconnect from a hotspot, click <b>Disconnect</b> .				

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

After the Device is connected to a Wi-Fi hotspot, in the **Wi-Fi Working Info** area, the current hotspot, IP address, subnet mask, and default gateway are displayed.

## 5.16.1.4 Configuring 3G/4G Settings

You can connect a wireless 3G/4G module to the USB port of the Device and then access the Device with the IP address provided by the module.

Not all models support this function.

<u>Step 1</u> Connect the wireless 3G/4G module to the USB port of the Device.

#### Step 2 Select Main Menu > NETWORK > 3G/4G.

The **3G/4G** interface is displayed, see Figure 5-190.

🚱 NETWORK				LIVE	
TCP/IP CONNECTION	TD-LTE all				
Wi-Fi	Ethernet Card	Ite0	Enable		
3G/4G	Network Type	TD-LTE			
PPPoE	APN	3gnet			
DDNS	AUTH	NO_AUTH			
EMAIL	Dial No.	*99#			
UPnP					
SNMP				Dial	
MULTICAST	Wireless Network				
REGISTER	Module State		IP Address		
ALARM CENTER	SIM State	EXIST	Subnet Mask		
P2P	PPP State	OFFLINE	Default Gateway		
				Apply	Back

Figure 5-190

The 3G/4G interface is consisted of three areas:

- Area 1: Displays the signal strength.
- Area 2: Displays the module configurations.
- Area 3: Displays the connection state.

The information of Area 2 will display after the 3G/4G module is connected; while the information of Area 1 and Area 3 will display only after the 3G/4G function is enabled.

<u>Step 3</u> The Device starts identifying the wireless module and displays the recognized information for the parameters in Area 2. See Table 5-59.

Parameter	Description
Ethernet Card	Displays the name of Ethernet card.

Description
Displays the network type. Different type represents different supplier.
Displays the default APN number.
Displays the default dial No.
Authentication mode. You can select <b>PAP</b> , <b>CHAP</b> , or <b>NO_AUTH</b> .

Table 5-59

- <u>Step 4</u> Select the **Enable** check box.
- <u>Step 5</u> Click **Dial** to start connecting.

After the connection is established, the result is displayed in the **Wireless Network** area. See Figure 5-191.

	J.					
	🚱 NETWORK				LIVE	💄 🕞 🖵 🚆
	TCP/IP	TD-LTE III				
	CONNECTION					
	Wi-Fi	Ethernet Card	Ite0	🔻 🔽 Enable		
>	3G/4G	Network Type	TD-LTE			
	PPPoE	APN	3gnet			
	DDNS	AUTH	NO_AUTH			
	EMAIL	Dial No.	*99#			
	UPnP					
	SNMP				Disconnect	
	MULTICAST	Wireless Network				
	REGISTER	Module State		IP Address	192.168.59.234	
	ALARM CENTER	SIM State	EXIST	Subnet Mask	255.0.0.0	
	P2P	PPP State	ONLINE	Default Gateway	192.168.59.235	
					Apply	Back

Figure 5-191

<u>Step 6</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

#### Supported 3G/4G Modules by the Device

- China Mobile 3G/4G: ZTE MF832S
- China Mobile 4G: ZTE MF832S
- China Unicom 3G: ZTE MF667S, HUAWEI E353U-1
- China Telecom 4G: HUAWEI EC122, ZTE AC2736
- If the Device is connected to China Telecom 3G/4G network, you can login the Device with the public IP address through the PC of public internet (The HTTP port is not configured as 80). If the Device is connected to China Unicom or China Mobile 3G network, which are defined as private network, therefore you cannot login the Device through PC that is connected to public internet.

- The Ethernet card names that are displayed on the 3G/4G interface are not constant, and they could be ppp5, ppp6, ppp7 or ppp8 and are different depending on the USB2.0 port on the Device that is connected to the 3G module.
- If you dial to connect to 3G/4G network, you have to keep trying till succeeded. The default
  gateway could be switched depending on the priority of Ethernet cards.
- The China Unicom and China Mobile 3G/4G modules in USB flash disk style do not support EDGE mode for the moment.

## 5.16.1.5 Configuring PPPoE Settings

PPPoE is another way for the Device to access the network. You can establish network connection by configuring PPPoE settings to give the Device a dynamic IP address in the WAN. To use this function, firstly you need to obtain the user name and password from the Internet Service Provider.

			layed. See Figure 5-13	· <b>∠</b> .		
	🚱 NETWORK				LIVE	
>	NETWORK         TCP/IP         CONNECTION         Wi-Fi         3G/4G         POPOE         DDNS         EMAIL         UPnP         SNMP         MULTICAST         REGISTER         ALARM CENTER         P2P	Enable User Name Password IP Address				€ - 豊
					Apply	Back

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > NETWORK > PPPoE.

The PPPoE interface is displayed. See Figure 5-192.

Figure 5-192

- <u>Step 2</u> Enable the PPPoE function.
- <u>Step 3</u> In the **User Name** box and **Password** box, enter the user name and password accordingly provided by the Internet Service Provider.
- <u>Step 4</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

The system pops up a message to indicate the successfully saved. The IP address appears on the PPPoE interface. You can use this IP address to access the Device.

NOTE When the PPPoE function is enabled, the IP address on the **TCP/IP** interface cannot be modified.

## 5.16.1.6 Configuring DDNS Settings

When the IP address of the Device changes frequently, the DDNS function can dynamically refresh the correspondence between the domain on DNS and the IP address, ensuring you access the Device by using the domain.

### Preparing for Configuration

Please confirm if the Device supports the DDNS Type and log in the website provided by the DDNS service provider to register the information such as domain from PC located in the WAN.

- If DDNS belongs to Quick DDNS type, domain registration is not needed.
- If DDNS belongs to other type, you need to login the DDNS website to register the information such as user name, password, and domain name.

After you have registered and logged in the DDNS website successfully, you can view the information of all the connected devices under this user name.

### **Configuring Steps**

#### Step 1 Select Main Menu > NETWORK > DDNS.

The **DDNS** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-193.

🚱 NETWORK				
TCP/IP	Enable			
CONNECTION	Enable			
Wi-Fi		After enabling DDNS function info.	on, third-party server may	collect your device
PPPoE	DDNS Type	Dyndns DDNS 🔹		
DDNS	Host IP	members.dyndns.org		
	Domain Name User Name			
EMAIL	Password			
UPnP	Interval	5	Min.	
SNMP				
MULTICAST				
REGISTER				
ALARM CENTER				
P2P				
				Apply Back
				Dack

Figure 5-193

Step 2 Configure the settings for the DDNS parameters.

Parameter	Description
	Enable the DDNS function.
Enable	NOTE NOTE
Ellable	After enabling DDNS function, the third-party might collect your
	Device information.
DDNS Type	Type and address of DDNS service provider.
	Type: Dyndns DDNS; address: members.dyndns.org
Host IP	Type: NO-IP DDNS; address: dynupdate.no-ip.com
	Type: CN99 DDNS; address: members.3322.org
Domain Name	The domain name for registering on the website of DDNS service
Domain Name	provider.
User Name	Enter the user name and password obtained from DDNS service
Password	provider. You need to register (including user name and password)
rasswulu	on the website of DDNS service provider.
Interval	Enter the amount of time that you want to update the DDNS.

Non Quick DDNS type. See Table 5-60.

Table 5-60

• Quick DDNS type. See Table 5-61.

Parameter	Description			
Enable	Enable the DDNS function.			
DDNS Type	Type of DDNS service provider.			
Host IP	Address of DDNS service provider. The default is			
TIUSTIF	www.quickddns.com which cannot be modified.			
	The domain name for registering on the website of DDNS service			
	provider.			
Domain Name	Select the domain mode as default domain or customized domain.			
Domain Name	• The default domain format is "MAC address (without			
	".").quickddns.com"			
	The customized domain format is "name. quickddns.com."			
Email	In the <b>Email</b> box, enter the email address that is used to access			
	the DDNS service provider.			
	After configuration is completed, click <b>Test</b> to check if the domain			
Test	name is successfully registered. If yes, go to the next step; if not,			
	please check the network connection status.			

Table 5-61

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

Enter the domain name in the browser on your PC, and then press **Enter**. If the web interface of the Device is displayed, the configuration is successful. If not, the configuration is failed.

### 5.16.1.7 Configuring EMAIL Settings

You can configure the email settings to enable the system to send the email as a notification when there is an alarm event occurs.

#### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > NETWORK > EMAIL.

The **EMAIL** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-194.

	🚱 NETWORK				LIVE	<b>L</b> 🖸	- 00	
	TCP/IP	Enable						
	CONNECTION	SMTP Server	MailServer					
	Wi-Fi	Port	25					
	3G/4G	User Name						
	PPPoE	Password						
	DDNS	Anonymity						
>	EMAIL							
	UPnP	Mail Receiver	Receiver1 -					
	SNMP	Email Address	none					
	MULTICAST	Sender						
	REGISTER	Title	XVR ALERT					
	ALARM CENTER	Attachment						
	P2P	Authentication	NONE					
		Interval	120	Sec.				
		Health Enable						
		Interval	60	Min.				
					Apply		Back	

Figure 5-194

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the email parameters. See Table 5-62.

Parameter	Description			
Enable	Enable the email function.			
SMTP Server	Enter the address of SMTP server of sender's email account.			
Port	Enter the port value of SMTP server. The default value setting is			
FUIL	25. You can enter the value according to your actual situation.			
User Name	Enter the user name and neceword of conder's small account			
Password	Enter the user name and password of sender's email account.			
Anonymity	If enable the anonymity function, you can login as anonymity.			
	In the Mail Receiver list, select the number of receiver that you			
Mail Receiver	want to receive the notification. The Device supports up to three			
	mail receivers.			
Email Address	Enter the email address of mail receiver(s).			
Sender	Enter the sender's email address. It supports maximum three			
Sender	senders separated by comma.			
	Enter the email subject.			
Title	Supports Chinese, English and Arabic numerals. It supports			
	maximum 64 characters.			
Attachment	Enable the attachment function. When there is an alarm event, the			
Allachimeril	system can attach snapshots as an attachment to the email.			

Parameter	Description			
	Select the encryption type: NONE, SSL, or TLS.			
Authentication	NOTE NOTE			
	For SMTP server, the default encryption type is <b>TLS</b> .			
	This is the interval that the system sends an email for the same			
	type of alarm event, which means, the system does not send an			
Interval (Sec.)	email upon any alarm event.			
Interval (Sec.)	This setting helps to avoid the large amount of emails caused by			
	frequent alarm events.			
	The value ranges from 0 to 3600. 0 means that there is no interval.			
Health Enable	Enable the health test function. The system can send a test email			
	to check the connection.			
	This is the interval that the system sends a health test email.			
Interval (Min.)	The value ranges from 30 to 1440. 0 means that there is no			
	interval.			
	Click Test to test the email sending function. If the configuration is			
Test	correct, the receiver's email account will receive the email.			
Test	NOTE NOTE			
	Before testing, click <b>Apply</b> to save the settings.			
	Table 5.62			

Table 5-62

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

### 5.16.1.8 Configuring UPnP Settings

You can map the relationship between the LAN and the WAN to access the Device on the LAN through the IP address on the WAN.

#### Preparation for Configuration

- Login the router to set the WAN port to enable the IP address to connect into the WAN.
- Enable the UPnP function at the router.
- Connect the Device with the LAN port on the router to connect into the LAN.
- Select **Main Menu > NETWORK > TCP/IP**, configure the IP address into the router IP address range, or enable the DHCP function to obtain an IP address automatically.

### Configuration Steps

#### Step 1 Select Main Menu > NETWORK > UPnP.

The **UPnP** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-195.

	NETWORK								LIVE	L .	, <u>90</u>
	TCP/IP	PAT									
	CONNECTION	Status		Offline							
	Wi-Fi	LAN IF									
	3G/4G										
	PPPoE	WAN I PAT T									
	DDNS	7	Service Name		Protocol	Int.Port	Ext.Port	Edit			
	EMAIL		HTTP		TCP						
>	UPnP		TCP		TCP	37777	37777				
			UDP		UDP	37778	37778				
	SNMP		RTSP		UDP	554	554				
	MULTICAST		RTSP		TCP	554	554				
	REGISTER		SNMP		UDP	161	161				
	REGISTER		HTTPS		TCP	443	443				
	ALARM CENTER										
	P2P										
									Apply	В	lack

Figure 5-195

Ctop 0	Configuration	settings for the			C	Table C CO
Sten Z	Contiguire the	Seminas for the	i ipup r	arameters	566	Ianie 5-63
				Juluinoloioi	000	

Parameter	Description
PAT	Enable the UPnP function.
	Indicates the status of UPnP function.
Status	Offline: Failed.
	Online: Succeeded.
	Enter IP address of router on the LAN.
LAN IP	NOTE NOTE
	After mapping succeeded, the system obtains IP address
	automatically without performing any configurations.
	Enter IP address of router on the WAN.
WAN IP	NOTE NOTE
	After mapping succeeded, the system obtains IP address
	automatically without performing any configurations.

Parameter	Description
PAT Table	<ul> <li>Description</li> <li>The settings in PAT table correspond to the UPnP PAT table on the router.</li> <li>Service Name: Name of network server.</li> <li>Protocol: Type of protocol.</li> <li>Int. Port: Internal port that is mapped on the Device.</li> <li>Ext. Port: External port that is mapped on the router.</li> <li>NOTE</li> <li>To avoid the conflict, when setting the external port, try to use the ports from 1024 through 5000 and avoid popular ports from 1 through 255 and system ports from 256 through 1023.</li> <li>When there are several devices in the LAN, please reasonably arrange the ports mapping to avoid mapping to the same external port.</li> <li>When establishing a mapping relationship, please ensure the mapping ports are not occupied or limited.</li> <li>The internal and external ports of TCP and UDP must be the same and cannot be modified.</li> <li>Click to modify the external port.</li> </ul>
	Table 5-63

Table 5-63

Step 3 Click Apply to complete the settings.

In the browser, enter http://WAN IP: External IP port. You can visit the LAN Device.

### 5.16.1.9 Configuring SNMP Settings

#### 

Not all models support this function.

You can connect the Device with some software such as MIB Builder and MG-SOFT MIB Browser to manage and control the Device from the software.

#### Preparation for Configuration

- Install the software that can manage and control the SNMP, such as MIB Builder and MG-SOFT MIB Browser
- Obtain the MIB files that correspond to the current version from the technical support.

#### **Configuration Steps**

## Step 1 Select Main Menu > NETWORK > SNMP.

The  $\ensuremath{\mathsf{SNMP}}$  interface is displayed. See Figure 5-196.

	NETWORK				LIVE	<b>1</b> 🕞	
	TCP/IP	Enable					
	CONNECTION	Version	V1 V2	V3 (Recommended)			
	Wi-Fi	SNMP Port	161				
		Read Community					
	PPPoE	Write Community					
	DDNS	Trap Address					
	EMAIL	Trap Port	162				
	UPnP	Read Only User	Public	Read/Write User	Private		
>	SNMP	Authentication Type	MD5	Authentication Type	MD5		•
	MULTICAST	Authentication Pa		Authentication Pa			
	REGISTER	Encryption Type	CBC-DES	Encryption Type	CBC-DES		•
	ALARM CENTER	Encryption Password		Encryption Password			
	P2P						
					Apply	Bac	:k
					Прр	But	

Figure 5-196

Step 2	Configure the	settings for	r the SNMP	parameters	See Table 5-64.
	Configure and	ootanigo io		purumotoro.	

Parameter	Description				
Enable	Enable the SNMP function.				
	Select the check box of SNMP version(s) that you are using.				
Version	NOTE NOTE				
	The default version is <b>V3</b> . There is a risk of select V1 or V2.				
SNMP Port	Indicates the monitoring port on the agent program.				
Read Community	Indicated the read/write strings supported by the agent program				
Write Community	Indicates the read/write strings supported by the agent program.				
	Indicates the destination address for the agent program to send the				
Trap Address	Trap information.				
Trap Port	Indicates the destination port for the agent program to send the				
Партон	Trap information.				
Read Only User	Enter the user name that is allowed to access the Device and has				
Read Only User	the "Read Only" permission.				
Read/Write User	Enter the user name that is allowed to access the Device and has				
Reau/White User	the "Read and Write" permission.				
Authentication Type	Includes MD5 and SHA. The system recognizes automatically.				
Authentication					
Password	Enter the password for authentication type and encryption type.				
Encryption	The password should be no less than eight characters.				
Password					
	In the Encryption Type list, select an encryption type. The default				
Encryption Type	setting is CBC-DES.				

- <u>Step 3</u> Compile the two MIB files by MIB Builder.
- <u>Step 4</u> Run MG-SOFT MIB Browser to load in the module from compilation.
- <u>Step 5</u> On the MG-SOFT MIB Browser, enter the Device IP that you want to manage, and then select the version number to query.
- <u>Step 6</u> On the MG-SOFT MIB Browser, unfold the tree-structured directory to obtain the configurations of the Device, such as the channels quantity and software version.

#### 5.16.1.10 Configuring Multicast Settings

When you access the Device from the network to view the video, if the access is exceeded, the video will not display. You can use the multicast function to group the IP to solve the problem.

```
Step 1 Select Main Menu > NETWORK > MULTICAST.
```

	METWORK			LIVE	<b>.</b>		
	TCP/IP	Enable					
	CONNECTION	IP Address	239 . 255 . 42 . 42				
	Wi-Fi	Port	36666				
	3G/4G						
	PPPoE						
	DDNS						
	EMAIL						
	UPnP						
	SNMP						
>	MULTICAST						
	REGISTER						
	ALARM CENTER						
	P2P						
				 0		Deat	
				Apply		Back	

The **MULTICAST** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-197.

Figure 5-197

Step 2	Configure	the settings	for the	multicast	parameters.	See Table 5-65.

Parameter	Description			
Enable	Enable the multicast function.			
IP Address	Enter the IP address that you want to use as the multicast IP.			
IP Address	The IP address ranges from 224.0.0.0 through 239.255.255.255.			
Port	Enter the port for the multicast. The port ranges from 1025 through			
POIL	65000.			

Table 5-65

Step 3 Click Apply to complete the settings.

You can use the multicast IP address to login the web. See Figure 5-198. On the web login dialog box, in the **Type** list, select **MULTICAST**. The web will automatically obtain the multicast IP address and join. Then you can view the video through multicast function.

Login in	
🛓 admin	
Password 🔤 💿	
TCP	
тср	
UDP	
MULTICAST	
Login	
그는 그는 학생님은 그는 것은 무엇이 집에서 가는 것을 수 없는 것을 많은 것을 것을 같은 것을 것을 것을 것을 것을 것을 같이 않았다. 것을	

Figure 5-198

### 5.16.1.11 Configuring Register Settings

You can register the Device into the specified proxy server which acts as the transit to make it easier for the client software to access the Device.

Step 1 Select Main Menu > NETWORK > REGISTER.

The **REGISTER** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-199.

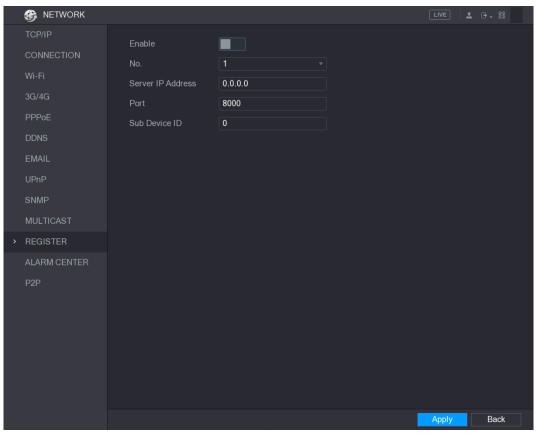


Figure 5-199

Step 2 Configure the settings for the register parameters. See Table 5-66.

Parameter	Description				
Enable Enable the register function.					
Server IP Address	Enter the server IP address or the server domain that you want to				
Server IF Address	register to.				
Port	Enter the port of the server.				
Sub Service ID	This ID is allocated by the server and used for the Device.				
Table 5-66					

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

### 5.16.1.12 Configuring Alarm Center Settings

You can configure the alarm center server to receive the uploaded alarm information. To use this function, the **Alarm Upload** check box must be selected. For details about alarm event settings, see "5.10 Alarm Events Settings."

#### Step 1 Select Main Menu > NETWORK > ALARM CENTER.

The ALARM CENTER interface is displayed. See Figure 5-200.

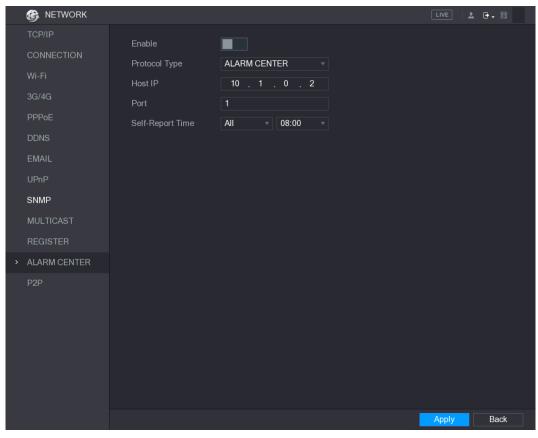


Figure 5-200

Step 2 Configure the settings for the alarm center parameters. See Table 5-67.

Parameter	Description			
Enable	Enable the alarm center function.			
Drotocol Tyroo	In the <b>Protocol Type</b> list, select protocol type. The default is			
Protocol Type	ALARM CENTER.			
Host IP	The IP address and communication port of the PC installed with			
Port	alarm client.			
Self-Report Time	In the Self-Report Time list, select time cycle and specific time for			
	uploading alarm.			

Table 5-67

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

### 5.16.1.13 Configuring P2P Settings

You can manage the devices by using P2P technology to download the application and register the devices. For details, see "5.1.4.5 Configuring P2P Settings."

## 5.16.2 Configuring Network Testing Settings

### 5.16.2.1 Testing the Network

You can test the network connection status between the Device and other devices.

#### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > INFO > NETWORK > Test.

The **Test** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-201.

🚹 INFO				LIVE	💄 🕞 🗸 🔛
VERSION	Online User No	etwork Load Network	: Test		
LOG	Network Test				
EVENT	Destination IP				
NETWORK	Test Result				
HDD					
CHANNEL INFO	Network Sniffer Pac	ket Backup			
BPS	Device Name	sdb5(USB DISK)		•	Refresh
	Address				Browse
	Name	IP	Sniffer Packet Size	Sniffer Packet	Backup
		192.168.20.13	OKB		



<u>Step 2</u> In the **Destination IP** box, enter the IP address.

Step 3 Click Test.

After testing is completed, the test result is displayed. You can check the evaluation for average delay, packet loss, and network status. See Figure 5-202.

INFO					LIVE	]
VERSION	Online User	Network Load	Network T	est		
LOG	Network Test					
EVENT	Destination IP	192.168.20.1	3			
> NETWORK	Test Result	Average Delay	y:1.0ms Packe	t Loss Rate:0% Network	Status:OK	
HDD						
CHANNEL INFO	Network Sniffer	Packet Backup				
BPS	Device Name	sdb5(USB DI	SK)			Refresh
	Address					Browse
	Name		IP	Sniffer Packet Size	Sniffer Pack	
	LAN1	192.1	.68.20.13	0KB		

Figure 5-202

## 5.16.2.2 Capturing Packet and Backing up

Packet capture means the operations such as capturing, resending, and editing data that are sent and received during network transmission. When there is network abnormality, you can perform packet capturing and back up into the USB storage device. This date can be provided to the technical support for analyzing the network condition.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > INFO > NETWORK > Network Test.

The Network Test interface is displayed. See Figure 5-203.

	<ul><li>INFO</li></ul>					LIVE	
	VERSION	Online User N	letwork Load	Network Test			
	LOG	Network Test					
	EVENT	Destination IP					
>	NETWORK	Test Result					
	HDD						
	CHANNEL INFO	Network Sniffer Pa	cket Backup				
	BPS	Device Name	sdb5(USB DIS	iK)			Refresh
		Address					Browse
		Name	l		Sniffer Packet Size	Sniffer Packe	t Backup
		LAN1	192.10	58.20.13	0KB		

Figure 5-203

- <u>Step 2</u> Connect a USB storage device to the Device.
- Step 3 Click Refresh.

The Device starts detecting the USB storage device and displays its name in the **Device Name** box.

- <u>Step 4</u> Select the route of the data that you want to capture and back up.
  - 1) In the Network Sniffer Packet Backup, click **Browse**.

The **Browse** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-204.

Brow	/se						
	Device Name	sda5(USB DISK)	<ul> <li>Refres</li> </ul>	sh			
	Total Space	15.60 GB					
	Free Space	15.60 GB					
	Address						
	Name		Size	Туре	Delete	Play	
	D IP			Folder	ŵ		
	RemoteConfig_20	171103141044.csv	464 B	File	亩		
	printf_201711051	72349.txt	451.3 KB	File	ā		
	kmsg_printf_2017	1105172349.txt	14.9 KB	File	ā		
	New Folder				ОК	Back	

Figure 5-204

2) Select the route.

- If there are several USB storage devices are connected to the Device, you can select from the **Device Name** list.
- Click Refresh to total space, free space and the file list in the selected USB storage device.
- In the case of insufficient capacity, click to delete the needless files.
- Click **New Folder** to create a new folder in the USB storage device.
- Click Apply to save the route selection settings. The Test interface is displayed again.

<u>Step 5</u> Click Click capturing and backing up.

- Only the data packet of one LAN can be captured at one time.
- After capturing starts, you can exit the **Test** interface to perform other operations such as web login and monitoring.

Step 6 Click

to stop capturing.

The backup data is saved in the selected route under the naming style "LAN name-time.pcap." See Figure 5-205. You can open it by using Wireshark software.

Brow	vse					
	Device Name	sda5(USB DISK)	Refres	sh		
	Total Space	15.60 GB				
	Free Space	15.60 GB				
	Address	1				
	Name		Size	Туре	Delete	Play
	D IP			Folder	亩	
	RemoteConfig_20	171103141044.csv	464 B	File	茴	
	📄 printf_201711051	72349.txt	451.3 KB	File	亩	
	kmsg_printf_2017	1105172349.txt	14.9 KB	File	<del></del> <b>前</b>	
	🗎 LAN1-2017110713	35215.pcap	1.18 MB	File	茴	
	New Folder				ОК	Back

Figure 5-205

# 5.17 Configuring Account Settings

You can add, modify and delete user accounts, groups, and ONVIF users, and set security questions for admin account.

D NOTE

- The user name supports 31 characters and group name supports 15 characters. The user name can be consisted of letter, number, "\_", "@", ".".
- You can set maximum 64 users and 20 groups. The group name by "User" and "Admin" cannot be deleted. You can set other groups and define the relevant permissions. However, the admin account cannot be set randomly.
- You can manage the account by user and group and the name cannot be repeated. Every user must belong to a group, and one user only belongs to one group.

## 5.17.1 Configuring User Account

#### 5.17.1.1 Adding a User Account

#### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ACCOUNT > USER. The USER interface is displayed. See Figure 5-20

The **USER** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-206.

	🔔 🚓 ACCOUNT								LIVE	•	🔁 🗸 🔛
>	USER										
	GROUP		User Name		Modify		MAC A	Memo			
			admin	admin		Login Local		admin 's ac	count		
	ONVIF USER										
		Add l	Jser								

Figure 5-206

#### Step 2 Click Add User.

The **Add User** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-207.

Add User			
User Name			
Password		Confirm Password	
Memo		User MAC	
Group admin			
Period Setting			
Authority			
System Playback	Monitor		
ACCOUNT	SYSTEM	SYSTEM INFO	MANUAL CONTROL
STORAGE	<ul> <li>EVENT</li> <li>BACKUP</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>NETWORK</li> <li>DEVICE MAINTENANCE</li> </ul>	CAMERA
			OK Back

Figure 5-207

Parameter	Description
User Name	Enter a user name and naceword for the account
Password	Enter a user name and password for the account.
Confirm Password	Re-enter the password.

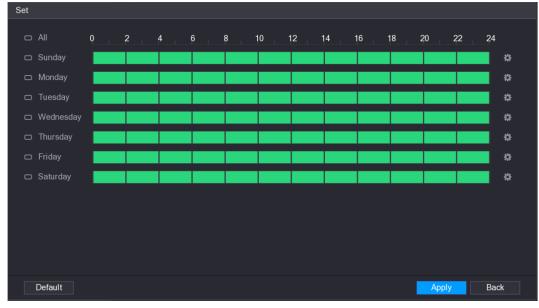
Parameter	Description					
Memo	Optional.					
Wemo	Enter a description of the account.					
User MAC	Enter user MAC address					
	Select a group for the account.					
Group	NOTE NOTE					
	The user rights must be within the group permission.					
	Click Set to display Set interface.					
Period	Define a period during which the new account can login the device					
Fellou	The new account cannot login the device during the time beyond					
	the set period.					
	In the Authority area, select the check boxes in the System tab,					
	Playback tab, and Monitor tab.					
Authority	NOTE NOTE					
Additionity	To manage the user account easily, when defining the user					
	account authority, it is recommended not to give the authority to the					
	common user account higher that the advanced user account.					
Table 5-68						

<u>Step 4</u> Click **OK** to complete the settings.

### Setting Permitted Period



The Set interface is displayed. See Figure 5-208.





<u>Step 2</u> Define the permitted period. By default, it is active all the time.

- Define the period by drawing.
  - Of Define for a specified day of a week: On the timeline, click the half-hour blocks to select the active period.

switches to . On the timeline of any selected day, click the half-hour blocks

to select the active periods, all the days with 🔤 will take the same settings.

the days will take the same settings.Define the period by editing. Take Sunday as an example.

1) Click 🛄.

The **Period** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-209.

Period	
Current Date:	Sunday
Period 1	00:00 - 24:00
Period 2	00:00 - 24:00
Period 3	00:00 - 24:00
Period 4	00:00 - 24:00
Period 5	00:00 - 24:00
Period 6	00:00 - 24:00
Сору	
🖂 Sunday	🗌 Monday 🔄 Tuesday 📄 Wednesday 📄 Thursday 📄 Friday 📄 Saturday
	OK

Figure 5-209

- 2) Enter the time frame for the period and select the check box to enable the settings.
  - $\diamond~$  There are six periods for you to set for each day.
  - ◇ Under Copy, select All to apply the settings to all the days of a week, or select specific day(s) that you want to apply the settings to.
- 3) Click **OK** to save the settings.

Step 3 Click OK.

#### 5.17.1.2 Modify a User Account

#### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ACCOUNT > USER.

The **USER** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-210.

	🔔 ACCOUNT							LIVE	•	
	USER						 			
	GROUP		User Name admin	Group admin	Modify	Status Login Local	Memo admin 's ac	count		
	ONVIF USER					LUgin Lucai	aummisac	count		
	ONVIT USEN									
		Add L	lser							
		Auuit								
									E,	

Figure 5-210

Step 2 Click for the user account that you want to modify.

The Modify User interface is displayed. See Figure 5-211.

Modify User		
User Name ad	lmin 👻	User MAC
Modify Password		Email Address 2***@qq.com
Old Password		Group admin 👻
New Password		Memo admin 's account
Confirm Password		Unlock Pattern
Prompt Question 1		Security Questions
Authority		
System Playbac	k Monitor	
<ul> <li>✓ AII</li> <li>✓ ACCOUNT</li> <li>✓ STORAGE</li> <li>✓ SECURITY</li> </ul>	☑ SYSTEM ☑ EVENT ☑ BACKUP	<ul> <li>✓ SYSTEM INFO</li> <li>✓ MANUAL CONTROL</li> <li>✓ NETWORK</li> <li>✓ CAMERA</li> <li>✓ DEVICE MAINTENANCE</li> </ul>
		OK Back

Figure 5-211

<u>Step 3</u> Change the settings for password, user name, user group, user MAC, memo, period, and authority.

The new password can be set from 8 digits through 32 digits and contains at least two types from number, letter and special characters (excluding"'", """, ";", ":" and "&").

For the admin account, you can enter or modify email address, enable/disable the unlock pattern, modify the security questions.

- In the **Email Address** box, enter the email address, and the click **Save** to save the setting.
- To use the unlock pattern, enable **Unlock Pattern**, click **I**, draw a pattern in the **Unlock Pattern** interface, and then click **Save** to save the setting.
- Configuring security questions.
- 1) Click Security Questions.

The **Security Questions** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-212.

Security Questi	ions	
Successfull	y set. Please delete it first if you want to reset security question!again.	
Question 1 Answer		
Question 2 Answer		
Question 3 Answer		
	Setting Delete	

Figure 5-212

- 2) In the **Question** list, select questions and enter the answers in the Answer box.
- Click Setting to save the settings. You can use the security questions and answers to reset the password for admin account.

To reset the security questions, on the **Security Questions**, enter the correct answers for each question, and then click **Delete**.

<u>Step 4</u> Click **OK** to complete the settings.

#### 5.17.1.3 Deleting a User Account

#### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ACCOUNT > USER.

The **USER** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-213.

🔔 account										LIVE	<u>.</u>	
> USER						 <b>D</b> I .						
GROUP		User Na admin	ame	Group admin	P		Status Login Loca	MAC A	Memo admin 's ad			
		admin		admin				11	admin sad	count		
ONVIF USER												
	Add	User										
			_									

Figure 5-213

Step 2 Click for the user account that you want to delete. A **Message** is displayed.

<u>Step 3</u> Click **OK** to delete a user account.

# 5.17.2 Configuring Group Account

### 5.17.2.1 Adding a Group

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ACCOUNT > GROUP. The GROUP interface is displayed. See Figure 5-214.

	上 ACCOUNT						
	USER						
		2	Group Name	Modify	Delete	Memo	
>	GROUP		admin			administrator group	
	ONVIF USER		user	ľ	ā	user group	
		Add	àroup				

Figure 5-214

### Step 2 Click Add Group.

The Add Group interface is displayed. See Figure 5-215.

Add Group				
Group Name Memo Authority				
System Playback	Monitor			
AII ACCOUNT STORAGE SECURITY	<ul> <li>□ SYSTEM</li> <li>□ EVENT</li> <li>□ BACKUP</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>SYSTEM INFO</li> <li>NETWORK</li> <li>DEVICE MAINTENANCE</li> </ul>	MANUAL CONTROL CAMERA	
			OK Back	

Figure 5-215

Step 3	Configure the setting	ngs for the parameters	s of adding a group.	See Table 5-69.
--------	-----------------------	------------------------	----------------------	-----------------

Parameter	Description
Group Name	Enter a name for the group.
Memo	Optional.
MEITIO	Enter a description of the account.

Parameter	Description			
Authority	In the Authority area, select the check boxes in the System tab,			
	Playback tab, and Monitor tab.			
Table 5.00				

Table 5-69

<u>Step 4</u> Click **OK** to complete the settings.

### 5.17.2.2 Modifying a Group

#### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ACCOUNT > GROUP.

The **GROUP** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-216.

🔔 🚓 ACCOUNT				
USER				
> GROUP	2 Group Name	Modify	Delete	Memo
	1 admin			administrator group
ONVIF USER	2 user	,	÷	user group
	Add Group			

Figure 5-216

<u>Step 2</u> Click for the group account that you want to modify.

Step 3 The Modify Group interface is displayed. See Figure 5-217.

Modify Group			
Group	user 💌		
Group Name	user		
Memo	user group		
Authority			
System Playb	ack Monitor		
AII ACCOUNT STORAGE SECURITY	SYSTEM EVENT BACKUP	<ul> <li>SYSTEM INFO</li> <li>NETWORK</li> <li>DEVICE MAINTENANCE</li> </ul>	MANUAL CONTROL
			OK Back

Figure 5-217

<u>Step 4</u> Change the settings for group name, memo, and authority. <u>Step 5</u> Click **OK** to complete the settings.

# 5.17.2.3 Deleting a Group

#### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ACCOUNT > GROUP.

The **GROUP** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-218.

	上 ACCOUNT					LIVE	
	USER						
>	GROUP	2	Group Name	Modify	Delete	Memo	
	GROUP		admin			administrator group	
	ONVIF USER		user	ľ	亩	user group	
		Add C	àroup				

Figure 5-218

Step 2 Click for the user account that you want to delete.

A Message is displayed.

<u>Step 3</u> Click **OK** to delete a group.

## 5.17.3 Configuring Onvif Users

The device manufactured by other company can connect to the Device through Onvif protocol by an authorized Onvif account.

### NOTE

The admin account is created for Onvif users right after the Device has been initialized <u>Step 1</u> Select **Main Menu > ACCOUNT > ONVIF USER**.

The **ONVIF USER** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-219.

	🔔 🚓 ACCOUNT					LIVE	
	USER						
	GROUP	1	User Name	Group Name	Modify	Delete	
			admin	admin			
,	ONVIF USER						
		Add l	Jser				

Figure 5-219

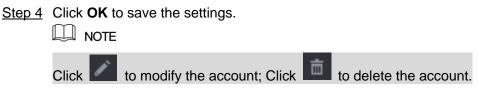
#### Step 2 Click Add User.

The Add User interface is displayed. See Figure 5-220.

Add User			
User			123
Password			
Confirm Password			
Group	admin		
		OK	Back

Figure 5-220

<u>Step 3</u> Enter user name, password, and select the group that you want this account to belong to.



# 5.18 Audio Management

Audio management function manages audio files and configures the playing schedule. When there is an alarm event, the audio file can be activated.

# 5.18.1 Configuring Audio Files

You can add audio files, listen to audio files, rename and delete audio files, and configure the audio volume.

Step 1 Select Main Menu > AUDIO > FILE MANAGER.

The FILE MANAGER interface is displayed. See Figure 5-221.

AUDIO						
SCHEDULE			21	-		
> FILE MANAGER	0 File Name	Size	Play	Rename	Delete	
	VOICE : HDD Mode		Volume		•	- +
					Add	
					Auu	

Figure 5-221

#### Step 2 Click Add.

The Add interface is displayed. See Figure 5-222.

Device Name		Befreeh			
Device Name	sdb5(USB DISK)	Refresh			
Total Space	15.60 GB				
Free Space	15.59 GB				
Address	1				
Name		Size	Туре	Delete	
IP			Folder	<b></b>	
<b>FSU6016U</b>			Folder	ā	
RemoteConfig_2	20171103141044.csv	464 B	File	茴	
🗌 📄 printf_20171105	172349.txt	451.3 KB	File	茴	=
B kmsg_printf_20 <sup>-</sup>	171105172349.txt	14.9 KB	File	茴	
🗌 📄 LAN1-20171107	135215.pcap	1.18 MB	File	茴	
🖹 LAN1-20171109	135008.pcap	9.16 MB	File	ā	
Softmusic.mp3		2.14 MB	File	ā	
			ОК	Back	

 $\underline{Step \ 3}$  Select the audio files that you want to import.

<u>Step 4</u> Click **OK** to start importing audio files from the USB storage device.

If the importing is successful, the audio files will display in the **FILE MANAGER** interface. See Figure 5-223.

	AUDIO							LIV		<b>.</b> 🗗	- 00 - 0.0
	SCHEDULE										
>	FILE MANAGER			File Name	Size	Play	Rename		Dele		
ŕ	FILE MANAGER		1	softmusic.mp3	2.14 MB	$\odot$	ľ		Ē		
			VOICE	: HDD Mode		Volume		-0		+	
									A	dd	



The imported audio files are automatically saved into the HDD, so you do not need to connect to the USB storage device to get the file next time.

- Click to play the audio file.
- Click to rename the audio file.
- Click to delete the audio file.
- To decrease or increase the playing volume, move the slider to the left or to the right.

# 5.18.2 Configuring Playing Schedule for Audio Files

You can configure the settings to play the audio files during the defined time period.

#### Step 1 Select Main Menu > AUDIO > SCHEDULE.

The **SCHEDULE** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-224.

> SCHEDULE	Period	File Name	Interval	Repeat Output
FILE MANAGER	00:00 - 24:00	None	60 Min	0 Mic -
	00 : 00 - 24 : 00	None	60 Min	· 0 Mic ·
	00 : 00 - 24 : 00	None	60 Min	. 0 Mic 👻
	00:00 - 24:00	None	60 Min	· 0 Mic •
	00:00 - 24:00	None	60 Min	· 0 Mic •
	00:00 - 24:00	None	60 Min	· 0 Mic 💌
				A surface De al
				Apply Back

Figure 5-224

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the schedule parameters. See Table 5-70.

Parameter	Description			
	In the <b>Period</b> box, enter the time. Select the check box to enable			
Period	the settings.			
	You can configure up to six periods.			
File Name	In the File Name list, select the audio file that you want to play for			
File Name	this configured period.			
Interval	In the Interval box, enter the time in minutes for how often you			
Interval	want to repeat the playing.			
Popoat	Configure how many times you want to repeat the playing in the			
Repeat	defined period.			
	Includes two options: MIC and Audio. It is MIC by default. The MIC			
Output	function shares the same port with talkback function and the latter			
	has the priority.			

Table 5-70

- The finish time for audio playing is decided by audio file size and the configured interval.
- Playing priority: Alarm event > Talkback > Trial listening > Audio file.

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

# 5.19 Storage Management

Storage management function manages the stored resources such as recorded video files and storage space. The function aims at providing easier operation and improving the storage efficiency.

# 5.19.1 Configuring Basic Settings

#### Step 1 Select Main Menu > STORAGE > BASIC.

The **BASIC** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-225.

	STORAGE					LIVE	<u>.</u>		
>	BASIC								
	SCHEDULE	HDD Full	Overwrite	<u></u>	<b>B 4</b> <sup>2</sup>				
	HDD MANAGER	Pack Mode Auto-Delete Old Files	Time Length	60	Min.				
	HDD DETECT	Auto-Delete Olu Files							
	REC ESTIMATE								
	FTP								
						Apply		Back	

Figure 5-225

Ctop 2	Configura the	oottinggo for th	va haala aattinga	noromotoro	See Table 5-71.
SIED Z	Compare me	e seumos ior u	ie basic settinus	barameters.	

Parameter	Description				
	Configure the settings for the situation all the read/write discs are				
	full, and there is no more free disc.				
HDD Full	Select Stop Record to stop recording				
	• Select <b>Overwrite</b> to overwrite the recorded video files				
	always from the earliest time.				
Pack Mode	Configure the time length and file length for each recorded video.				
Auto-Delete Old Files	Configure whether to delete the old files and if yes, configure the				
Auto-Delete Old Files	N days.				

Table 5-71

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

# 5.19.2 Configuring the Recording and Snapshot Schedule

The system starts recording and taking snapshot according to the configured schedule. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule" and "5.1.4.10 Configuring Snapshot Storage Schedule."

### 5.19.3 Configuring HDD Manager

You can view the HDD information, format HDD, and configure the HDD type through HDD manager.

#### Step 1 Select Main Menu > STORAGE > HDD MANAGER.

The HDD MANAGER interface is displayed. See Figure 5-226.

In the table, you can view the information of current HDD, such as device name, HDD type, status, total space and free space, and serial number of the HDD port.

	E STORAGE						LIVE	
	BASIC	44			Discologia de Dispitia de			5 0
	SCHEDULE	1* All	De	evice Name	Physical Position	Туре	Health status	Free Sr 0.00
>	HDD MANAGER			sda	main board-1	Read/Write 👻	Normal	0.00
	HDD DETECT							
	REC ESTIMATE							
	FTP							
		Refr	esh	Format			Apply	Back

Figure 5-226

Step 2 Configuring the settings for the HDD manager.

- HDD type setting: In the **Type** list, select **Read/Write**, **Read-Only** or **Redundant**, and then click **Apply** to save the settings.
- HDD format: Select the HDD that you want to format, click **Format**, in the pop-up message, click **OK** to start formatting, and then following the onscreen message to complete formatting.

# 5.19.4 Configuring HDD Detecting Settings

Not all models support this function.

HDD detecting function detects the current status of HDD to let you know the HDD performance and replace the defective HDD.

### 5.19.4.1 Detecting HDD

You can detect HDD by key area detect and global detect.

- Key area detect: Detect the files saved in HDD. The detected bad track can be repaired by formatting. If there are no files in HDD, the system cannot detect the bad track.
- Global detect: Detect the whole HDD through Windows, which takes time and might affect the HDD that is recording the video.

Step 1 Select Main Menu > STORAGE > HDD DETECT > Detect.

BASIC
Detect
Report

SCHEDULE

HDD MANAGER

HDD DETECT

FTP

Good

Bad

Biock

Image: Contract of the second seco

The **Detect** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-227.

Figure 5-227

<u>Step 2</u> In the **Type** list, select **Key Area Detect** or **Global Detect**; and in the **HDD** list, select the HDD that you want to detect.

#### Step 3 Click Start Detect.

The system starts detecting the HDD. After detecting is completed, see Figure 5-228.  $\hfill \hfill \hfi$ 

During detecting, click **Pause** to pause detecting, click **Continue** to restart detecting, and click **Stop Detect** to stop detecting.

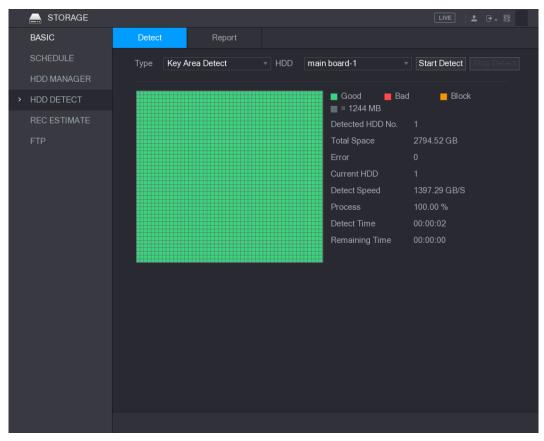


Figure 5-228

### 5.19.4.2 View Detecting Results

After the detecting is completed, you can view the detecting reports to find out the problem and replace the defective HDD to avoid data loss.

### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > STORAGE > HDD DETECT > Report.

The **Report** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-229.

	STORAGE					LIVE	
	BASIC	Dete	ect	Report			
	SCHEDULE		HDD Port No.		Start Time	Capacity	Er
	HDD MANAGER		main board-1	Key Area Detect	2018-01-30 15:36:11	2794.52 GB	
>	HDD DETECT						
	REC ESTIMATE FTP						

Figure 5-229

Step 2 Click

The **Details** interface is displayed. You can view detecting results and S.M.A.R.T reports. See Figure 5-230 and Figure 5-231.

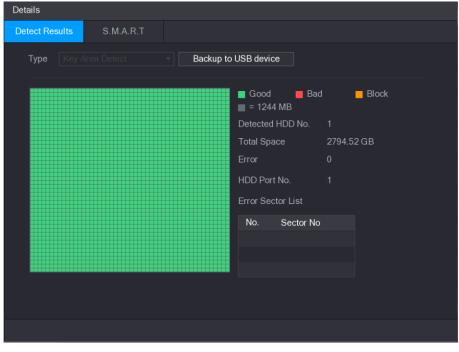


Figure 5-230

Details	5								
Detec	t Results	S.M.A.R.T							
Po	ort								
Mc	odel	WDCWD30EURX63T0FY0							
No		WDWMC4N0428917							
Sta	atus	HDD state is good							
De	escribe:								
s	mart ID	Attribute	Threshold	Value	Worst Value	Current Value	< 🔺		
		Read Error Rate	51	200	200				
		Spin Up Time	21	238	176	3083			
		Start/Stop Count				5041			
		Reallocated Sector Cou	unt 140	200	200				
		Seek Error Rate		200	200				
							•		

Figure 5-231

# 5.19.5 Configuring Record Estimate

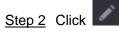
Record estimate function can calculate how long you can record video according to the HDD capacity, and calculate the required HDD capacity according to the record period.

Step 1 Select Main Menu > STORAGE > REC ESTIMATE.

The **REC ESTIMATE** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-232.

🚐 STORAGE						LIVE 🔔 🕂 🗸 ஜ
BASIC	√ Channel	Edit	Bit Rate(Kb/S)	Record Time	Resolution	Frame Rate
SCHEDULE		Eun	2048	24	2560x1440(4MP)	15
		ï	2048	24	1920x1080(1080P)	25
HDD MANAGER	√ 2 √ 3	ï	2048	24	2560x1440(4MP)	
HDD DETECT		ï	2048	24	2560x1440(4MP)	
REC ESTIMATE	v + √ 5	ľ	2048	24	2560x1440(4MP)	
	v 0 √ 6	1	2048	24	2560x1440(4MP)	15
FTP	√ 7	1	2048	24	2560x1440(4MP)	
		1	2048	24	2560x1440(4MP)	
	Known Spac	ce Know	n Time			
	Capacity	0		TB = 0	GB Sel	ect
	Time			Days		
	Note: The re	ecord estir	nation data here is	for reference or	ly. Please be cautious	when you are
	calculating r	ecord per	iod.			

Figure 5-232





The Edit dialog box is displayed. See Figure 5-233.

You can configure the resolution, frame rate, bit rate and record time for the selected channel.

Edit		
Channel Resolution	1 2560*1440(2560x144	▼ 10) ▼
Frame Rate Bit Rate	<b>15</b> <b>4096</b> (32 - 61	▼  44)Kb/S
Record Time	24	h
Сору		OK Back

Figure 5-233

Step 3 Click OK to save the settings.

Then the system will calculate the time period that can be used for storage according to the channels settings and HDD capacity.

Click Copy to copy the settings to other channels.

### Calculating Recording Time

Step 1 On the **REC ESTIMATE** interface, click the **Known Space** tab.

The Known Space interface is displayed. See Figure 5-234.

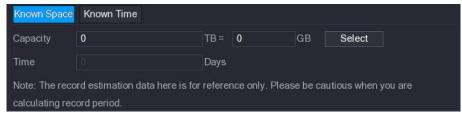


Figure 5-234

Step 2 Click Select.

The Select HDD(s) interface is displayed.

Step 3 Select the check box of the HDD that you want to calculate.

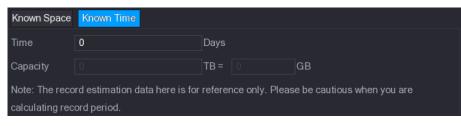
In the **Known Space** tab, in the **Time** box, the recording time is displayed. See Figure 5-235.

Known Space	Known Time					
Capacity	7	TB =	7000	GB	Select	
Time		Days				
Note: The record estimation data here is for reference only. Please be cautious when you are						
calculating rec	cord period.					



### Calculating HDD Capacity for Storage

<u>Step 1</u> On the **REC ESTIMATE** interface, click the **Known Time** tab. The **Known Time** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-236.





<u>Step 2</u> In the **Time** box, enter the time period that you want to record. In the **Capacity** box, the required HDD capacity is displayed. See Figure 5-237.

Known Space	Known Time					
Time	22	Days				
Capacity		TB =		GB		
Note: The record estimation data here is for reference only. Please be cautious when you are calculating record period.						

Figure 5-237

# 5.19.6 Configuring FTP Storage Settings

You can store and view the recorded videos and snapshots on the FTP server.

### Preparation for Configuration

Purchase or download a FTP server and install it on your PC.

For the created FTP user, you need to set the write permission; otherwise the upload of recorded videos and snapshots will be failed.

### **Configuration Steps**

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > STORAGE > FTP.

The **FTP** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-238.

	🔜 STORAGE							LIV	/E 🛛 💄 🛛	→ - <sup>D0</sup>
	BASIC	Enable	_			TD (D		1)		
	SCHEDULE	Enable		🔾 FTP 🤇	) SF	TP (Rec	ommena	ea)		
	HDD MANAGER	Host IP	0.0	.0.0						
	ADVANCE	Port	22							
	QUOTA	Anonymity								
	HDD DETECT	User Name								
	REC ESTIMATE	Password								
>	FTP	Remote Directory								
		File Length(M)	0							
		Image Upload Interval(	2							
		Channel	1							
		Week Day	Tue			Alarm	Intel	MD	General	
		Period 1	00:00	- 24 :00						
		Period 2	00:00	- 24 :00						
		Default Test						Apply	R	ick
		Default						Apply	Ба	

Figure 5-238

O1 O		= f = u f = v FTD = u f f = u f	parameters. See Table 5-72.
Sten 2	L ONTINUITE THE SETTING	is for the FIP settings	narameters See Janie 5-77

Parameter	Description			
Enable	Enable the FTP upload function.			
	Select FTP type.			
FTP type	FTP: Plaintext transmission.			
	SFTP: Encrypted transmission (recommended)			
Host IP	IP address of the PC that is installed with FTP server.			
Port	• FTP: The default is 21.			
POIL	SFTP: The default is 22.			
Anonymity	Enter the user name and password to login the FTP server.			
User Name	Enable the anonymity function, and then you can login			
Password	anonymously without entering the user name and password.			
	Create folder on FTP server.			
	If you do not enter the name of remote directory, system			
	automatically creates the folders according to the IP and			
Romoto Directory	time.			
Remote Directory	• If you enter the name of remote directory, the system creates			
	the folder with the entered name under the FTP root			
	directory first, and then automatically creates the folders			
	according to the IP and time.			

Parameter	Description		
Parameter         File Length(M)         Image Upload Interval (Sec.)	<ul> <li>Description</li> <li>Enter the length of the uploaded recorded video.</li> <li>If the entered length is less than the recorded video length, only a section of the recorded video can be uploaded.</li> <li>If the entered length is more than the recorded video length, the whole recorded video can be uploaded.</li> <li>If the entered length is 0, the whole recorded video will be uploaded.</li> <li>If this interval is longer than snapshot interval, the system takes the recent snapshot to upload. For example, the interval is 5 seconds, and snapshot interval is 2 seconds per snapshot, the system uploads the recent snapshot every 5 seconds.</li> <li>If this interval is shorter than snapshot interval, the system uploads the snapshot per the snapshot interval. For example, the interval is 5 seconds, and snapshot interval. For example, the interval is 5 seconds, and snapshot interval. For example, the interval is 5 seconds, and snapshot interval. For example, the interval is 5 seconds, and snapshot interval. For example, the interval is 5 seconds, and snapshot interval. For example, the interval is 5 seconds, and snapshot interval. For example, the interval is 5 seconds, and snapshot interval is 10 seconds per snapshot, the system uploads the snapshot every 10 seconds.</li> <li>To configure the snapshot interval, select Main Menu &gt;</li> </ul>		
	CAMERA > ENCODE > Snapshot.		
Channel	Select the channel that you want to apply the FTP settings.		
Week Day	Select the week day and set the time period that you want to		
Period 1, Period 2	upload the recorded files. You can set two periods for each week day.		
Record type	Select the record type (Alarm, Intel, MD, and General) that you want to upload. The selected record type will be uploaded during the configured time period.		

Table 5-72

Step 3 Click Test.

The system pops up a message to indicate success or failure. If failed, please check the network connection or configurations.

Step 4 Click Apply to complete the settings.

# 5.20 Configuring System Settings

# 5.20.1 Configuring General System Settings

You can configure the device basic settings, time settings, and holiday settings.

For details about basic and time settings, see "5.1.4.2 Configuring General Settings" and "5.1.4.3 Configuring Date and Time Settings."

To configure the holiday settings, do the following:

#### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > GENERAL > Holiday.

The Holiday interface is displayed. See Figure 5-239.

	🗱 SYSTEM						LIVE	
>	GENERAL	General		Date&Time	Holiday			
	SECURITY		Status	Name	Date	Period	Operation	
	SYSTEM MAINTAIN							
	IMP/EXP							
	DEFAULT							
	UPGRADE							
							Add a Holiday	

Figure 5-239

#### Step 2 Click Add a Holiday.

The Add a Holiday interface is displayed. See Figure 5-240.

Add a Holiday					
Holiday Name					
Repeat Mode	⊖ Once		💿 Always		
Holiday Range	💿 Date		⊖ Week		
Start Time		- 11	- 09		
End Time		- 11	- 09		
Add More					
				Add	Cancel

Figure 5-240

<u>Step 3</u> Configure the holiday name, repeat mode, time range according to your actual situation.

Step 4 Click Add.

The added holiday information is displayed. See Figure 5-241.

Enable the Add More function, so you can continue adding holiday information.

🗱 SYSTEM						
> GENERAL	General	Date&Time	Holiday			
SECURITY	1 Sta	tus Name	Date	Period	Operation	
SYSTEM MAINTAIN		newyear	2017 Dec The L	7 day(s)		
IMP/EXP						
DEFAULT						
UPGRADE						
					Add a Holiday	

Figure 5-241

# 5.20.2 Configuring Security Settings

To ensure the network security and protect data, you can configure the access permission to the Device from host IP (host IP means the PC or server that has an IP).

- White list includes the host IP that are permitted to access the Device.
- Back list includes the host IP that are not permitted to access the Device.
- Updata time white list includes the host IP that are permitted to sync the Device time.

### 5.20.2.1 Configuring Access Right

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > SYSTEM > SECURITY > Access Right. The Access Right interface is displayed. See Figure 5-242.

	🗱 SYSTEM						LIVE	
	GENERAL	Access Right	Password Reset					
>	SECURITY	Туре	Network	Access-Whitelist 🔻				
	SYSTEM MAINTAIN	Enable						
	IMP/EXP	Start Address				Add IP Address		
	DEFAULT	End Address				Add IP Segment		
	UPGRADE		Start Address		End Ad	droop	Edit	Delete
			Start Address		End Ad	aress	Edit	Delete
							Apply	Back

Figure 5-242

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the security parameters. See Table 5-73.

Parameter	Description		
Tuno	In the Type list, you can select Limits of network-whitelist, Limits		
Туре	of network-blacklist, or Updata time-whitelist.		
Enable	Enable the security settings.		
Start Address	Enter a single IP address or a start IP address of a network		
Start Address	segment.		
Add IP Address	Click Add IP Address to add a single IP address.		
End Address	Enter the end IP address of a network segment.		
	Click Add IP Segment to add the IP addresses from the start IP		
	through the end IP.		
Add IP Segment	NOTE NOTE		
	The system supports up to 64 IP addresses.		

Table 5-73

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

### 5.20.2.2 Configuring System Service Settings

You can enable or disable the system internal services.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > SYSTEM > SECURITY > System Service.

The **System Service** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-243.

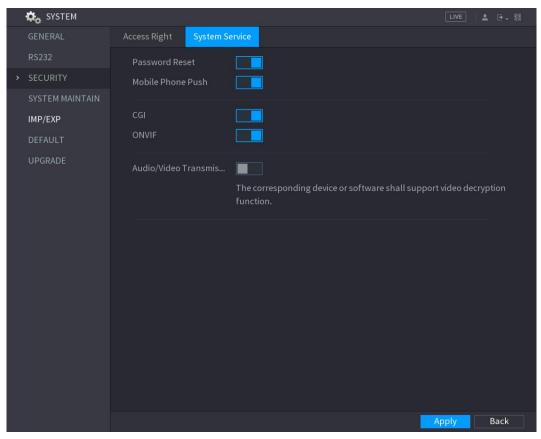


Figure 5-243

Stop 2	Configure the para	motors For details	see Table 5-71
<u>Step z</u>	Configure the para	neters. For details,	See Table 5-74.

Parameter	Description
	Enable or disable the password reset function. It is enabled
	by default.
Password Reset	NOTE NOTE
	If the password reset function is disabled, you can find back
	the password by the security questions. Make sure you have
	configured the security questions.
	If you enable this function, the snapshots that are activated
Mobile Phone Push	by the alarm event on the Device can be sent to mobile
	phone.
	This function is enabled by default.
CGI	The device can access through CGI protocol.
ONVIF	The device can access through ONVIF protocol.
	Enable or disable the audio and video stream encryption. If
Audio/Video Transmission	enabled, make sure the devices or software support
	decryption.

Table 5-74

# 5.20.3 Configuring System Maintenance Settings

When the Device has been running for a long time, you can configure the auto reboot when the Device is not working. You can also configure the case fan mode to reduce noise and extend the service life.

#### Step 1 Select Main Menu > SYSTEM > SYSTEM MAINTAIN.

The SYSTEM MAINTAIN interface is displayed. See Figure 5-244.

	🔅 SYSTEM		LIVE	L 🕂 🗸 🔛
	GENERAL	Auto Reboot		
	SECURITY	Never *		
>	SYSTEM MAINTAIN	Case Fan Mode		
	IMP/EXP	Always run *		
	DEFAULT			
	UPGRADE			
			Apply	Back

Figure 5-244

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the system maintenance parameters. See Table 5-75.

Parameter	Description
Auto Reboot	In the Auto Reboot list, select the reboot time.
Case Fan Mode	In the <b>Case Fan Mode</b> list, you can select <b>Always run</b> or <b>Auto</b> . If you select <b>Auto</b> , the case fan will stop or start according to the external conditions such as the Device temperature.
	Not all models support this function, and it is only supported on
	the local configuration interface.

Table 5-75

Step 3 Click Apply to complete the settings.

### 5.20.4 Exporting and Importing System Settings

You can export or import the Device system settings if there are several Devices that require the same setup.

- The **IMP/EXP** interface cannot be opened if the backup operation is ongoing on the other interfaces.
- When you open the **IMP/EXP** interface, the system refreshes the devices and sets the current directory as the first root directory.

• Click Format to format the USB storage device.

### **Exporting System Settings**

```
<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > SYSTEM > IMP/EXP.
```

The IMP/EXP interface is displayed. See Figure 5-245.

🔅 SYSTEM		LIVE 👤 🗘 🖓 🗸 📴
GENERAL SECURITY SYSTEM MAINTAIN	Device Name Total Space Free Space	Refresh Format
DEFAULT	Address Name	Size Type Delete
	New Folder	Import Export

Figure 5-245

<u>Step 2</u> Insert a USB storage device into one of the USB ports on the Device.

Step 3 Click **Refresh** to refresh the interface.

The connected USB storage device is displayed. See Figure 5-246.

🔅 SYSTEM					LIVE 🔔 (	₹ - 80
GENERAL	Device Name	sdb5(USB DISK)	Refresh	Format		
SECURITY			nencon	- i ointat		
SYSTEM MAINTAIN	Total Space	15.60 GB				
STOTEMINIAINTAIN	Free Space	15.41 GB				
> IMP/EXP						
DEFAULT	Address					
UPGRADE	Name		Size	Туре	Delete	
	D IP			Folder		
	🔁 FSU6016U			Folder		
	IVSS			Folder		
	RemoteConfig_2	20171103141044.csv	464 B	File	亩	
	printf_20171105	172349.txt	451.3 KB	File		
	kmsg_printf_20 <sup>-</sup>	171105172349.txt	14.9 KB	File		
	🖹 LAN1-20171107	135215.pcap	1.18 MB	File		
	LAN1-20171109	135008.pcap	9.16 MB	File		
	🖹 softmusic.mp3		2.14 MB	File		
	Iemontree.mp3		6.66 MB	File	â	
	■ VID_20171105_	135734.mp4	43.60 MB	File		
	printf_20171113	101348.txt	30.29 MB	File		
	📄 IP PTZ Camera_	_20171116100220_201711	527.2 KB	File		
	printf_20171117	'110546.txt	19.91 MB	File	ā	
	kmsg_printf_20	171117110546.txt	14.8 KB	File		
	New Folder			In	nport Exp	oort

Figure 5-246

#### Step 4 Click Export.

There is a folder under the name style of "Config\_[YYYYMMDDhhmmss]". Double-click this folder to view the backup files.

### Importing System Settings

- <u>Step 1</u> Insert a USB storage device containing the exported configuration files from another Device) into one of the USB ports on the Device.
- <u>Step 2</u> Select Main Menu > SYSTEM > IMP/EXP. The IMP/EXP interface is displayed.
- <u>Step 3</u> Click **Refresh** to refresh the interface.

The connected USB storage device is displayed.

- <u>Step 4</u> Click on the configuration folder (under the name style of "Config\_[YYYYMMDDhhmmss]") that you want to import.
- Step 5 Click Import.

The Device will reboot after the imported is succeeded.

# 5.20.5 Restoring Default Settings

### D NOTE

Only Admin account supports this function.

You can select the settings that you want to restore to the factory default.

#### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > SYSTEM > DEFAULT.

The **DEFAULT** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-247.

	🎎 SYSTEM		LIVE	≗ ⊡-	9 Q 2.43
	GENERAL	Please select setting entries that you want to default.			
	SECURITY	Please select setting entities that you want to delauit.			
	SYSTEM MAINTAIN	Select All			
	IMP/EXP	CAMERA			
>	DEFAULT	EVENT			
	UPGRADE	SYSTEM			
		NETWORK			
		STORAGE			
_					
		Factory Default	Apply	Bac	:k

Figure 5-247

<u>Step 2</u> Restore the settings.

- Select the settings that you want to restore, and then click **Apply**. The system starts restoring the selected settings.
- Click **Factory Default**, and then click **OK**. The system starts restoring the whole settings.

# 5.20.6 Upgrading the Device

### 5.20.6.1 Upgrading File

- <u>Step 1</u> Insert a USB storage device containing the upgrade files into the USB port of the Device.
- <u>Step 2</u> Select Main Menu > SYSTEM > UPGRADE. The UPGRADE interface is displayed. See Figure 5-248.

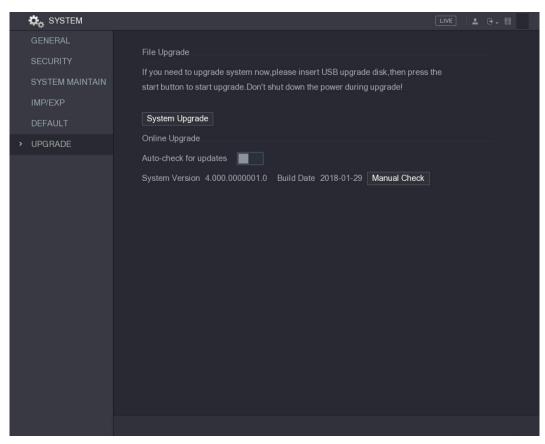


Figure 5-248

#### Step 3 Click System Upgrade.

The System Upgrade interface is displayed. See Figure 5-249.

System Upgrade				
Device Name Total Space Free Space	sdb5(USB DISK) 15.60 GB 15.60 GB	▼ Refresh		
Address				
Name		Size	Туре	Delete
DIP			Folder	
RemoteConfig_20	171103141044.csv	464 B	File	
printf_201711051	72349.txt	451.3 KB	File	
kmsg_printf_2017	1105172349.txt	14.9 KB	File	â
■ LAN1-2017110713	35215.pcap	1.18 MB	File	
Update File				
			Start	Back

Figure 5-249

<u>Step 4</u> Click the file that you want to upgrade.

The selected file is displayed in the Update File box.

Step 5 Click Start.

### 5.20.6.2 Performing Online Upgrade

When the Device is connected to Internet, you can use online upgrade function to upgrade the system.

Before using this function, you need to check if there is any new version by auto check or manual check.

- Auto check: The Device checks if there is any new version available at intervals.
- Manual check: Perform real-time check if there is any new version available.



Ensure the correct power supply and network connection during upgrading; otherwise the upgrading might be failed.

#### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > SYSTEM > UPGRADE.

The UPGRADE interface is displayed. See Figure 5-250.

🌣 SYSTEM		LIVE	
GENERAL			
SECURITY	File Upgrade		
SYSTEM MAIN	If you need to upgrade system now,please insert USB upgrade disk,then press th TAIN start button to start upgrade.Don't shut down the power during upgrade!	ie	
IMP/EXP	star battor to star tapy do bon tonat dominate ponor danny apyrado.		
DEFAULT	System Upgrade		
> UPGRADE	Online Upgrade		
	Auto-check for updates		
	System Version 4.000.0000001.0 Build Date 2018-01-29 Manual Check		

Figure 5-250

<u>Step 2</u> Check if there is any new version available.

- Auto check: Enable Auto-check for updates.
- Manual check: Click Manual Check.

The system starts checking the new versions. After checking is completed, the check result is displayed.

- If the "It is the latest version" text is displayed, you do not need to upgrade.
- If the text indicating there is a new version, please go the step 3. See Figure 5-251.

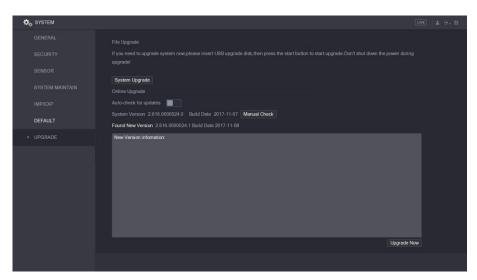
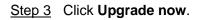


Figure 5-251



### 5.20.6.3 Uboot Upgrading



- Under the root directory in the USB storage device, there must be "u-boot.bin.img" file and "update.img" file saved, and the USB storage device must be in FAT32 format.
- Make sure the USB storage device is inserted; otherwise the upgrading cannot be performed.

When starting the Device, the system automatically check if there is a USB storage device connected and if there is any upgrade file, and if yes and the check result of the upgrade file is correct, the system will upgrade automatically. The Uboot upgrade can avoid the situation that you have to upgrade through +TFTP when the Device is halted.

# 5.21 Viewing Information

You can view the information such as log information, HDD information, and version details

# 5.21.1 Viewing Version Details

You can view the version details such as device model, system version, and build date. Select **Main Menu > INFO > VERSION**, the **VERSION** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-252.

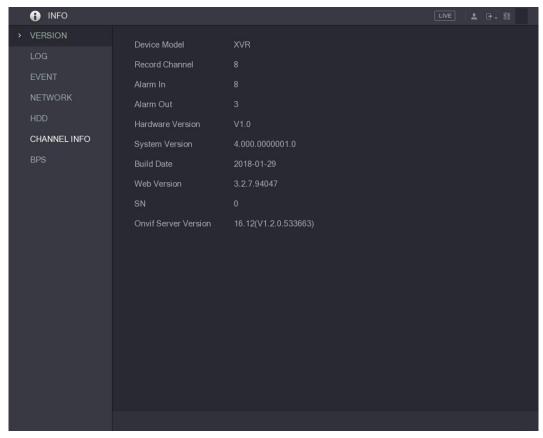


Figure 5-252

# 5.21.2 Viewing Log Information

You can view and search the log information.

- If there is no HDD installed, the system can save up to 10,000 logs.
- If there is HDD installed and has been formatted, the system can save up to 500,000 logs.
- If there is HDD installed, the logs about system operations are saved in the memory of the Device and other types of logs are saved into the HDD. If there is no HDD installed, the other types of logs are also saved in the memory of the Device.
- When formatting the HDD, the logs will not be lost. However, if you take out the HDD from the Device, the logs might be lost.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > INFO > LOG.

The **LOG** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-253.

	<ul><li>INFO</li></ul>				LIVE	
	VERSION	Туре	All			
>	LOG	Start Time	2018 - 01 - 29	00 : 00 : 00		
	EVENT					Oraut
	NETWORK	End Time	2018 - 01 - 29	00:00:00		Search
	HDD	0 Log Time	Event			
	CHANNEL INFO					
	BPS					
						Details
						Clear

Figure 5-253

- <u>Step 2</u> In the **Type** list, select the log type that you want to view (**System**, **Config**, **Storage**, **Record**, **Account**, **Clear**, **Playback**, and **Connection**) or select **All** to view all logs.
- <u>Step 3</u> In the **Start Time** box and **End Time** box, enter the time period to search, and then click **Search**.

The search results are displayed. See Figure 5-254.

<ul><li>INFO</li></ul>							LIVE	L ⊡ - <sup>90</sup>
VERSION	Туре	All						
LOG	Start Time		01 20	00:00:00				
EVENT								
NETWORK	End Time	2018	-01-31	00 : 00 : 00				Search
NETWORK	39 Log 1	lime	Event					
HDD	25 2018-	01-30 14:51:11	Save <ne< td=""><td>TWORK&gt; cor</td><td>nfig!</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></ne<>	TWORK> cor	nfig!			
CHANNEL INFO	26 2018-	01-30 14:51:21	HDD Amo	ount<1>, Curre	ent Workin	g HDD		
	27 2018-	01-30 14:51:22	Save <p2< td=""><td>P&gt; config!</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></p2<>	P> config!				
BPS	28 2018-	01-30 14:51:22	Save <p2< td=""><td>P&gt; config!</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></p2<>	P> config!				
	29 2018-	01-30 14:51:31	Save < PI	R Alarm> cont	fig!			
	30 2018-	01-30 14:51:56	S.M.A.R.	T INFO				
	31 2018-	01-30 14:51:56	S.M.A.R.	T INFO				
	32 2018-	01-30 14:52:31	Add Grou	p <admin></admin>				
	33 2018-	01-30 14:52:31	Add Grou	p <user></user>				
	34 2018-	01-30 14:52:31	Add User	<onvif:admin< td=""><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></onvif:admin<>				
	35 2018-	01-30 14:52:31	User logg	ed in. <admin></admin>				
	36 2018-	01-30 14:52:35	Save < GE	ENERAL> con	fig!			
	37 2018-	01-30 14:52:36	Save <ne< td=""><td>TWORK&gt; cor</td><td>nfig!</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></ne<>	TWORK> cor	nfig!			
		01-30 14:52:39			*			
	39 2018-	01-30 14:53:10	User logg	ed in.<127.0.0	0.1>			-
				1/1 >			Backup	Details Clear

Figure 5-254

- Click **Details** or double-click the log that you want to view, the **Detailed Information** interface is displayed. Click **Next** or **Previous** to view more log information.
- Click **Backup** to back up the logs into the USB storage device.
- Click Clear to remove all logs.

# 5.21.3 Viewing Event Information

You can view the event information of the Device and channel.

Select Main Menu > INFO > EVENT, the EVENT interface is displayed. See Figure 5-255.

	<ul><li>INFO</li></ul>					LIVE	÷ - •••	
	VERSION	Alarm Type		•	Alarm Status			
>	EVENT	Video Loss	134567	8				
	NETWORK							
	HDD							
	CHANNEL INFO							
	BPS							
		Refresh						

Figure 5-255

## 5.21.4 Viewing Network Information

You can view the online users, network data transmission details, and test network. For details about testing network, see "5.16.2.1 Testing the Network."

### 5.21.4.1 Viewing Online Users

You can view the online user information and block any user for a period of time.

Select Main Menu > INFO > NETWORK > Online users, the Online users interface is displayed. See Figure 5-256.

INFO						
VERSION	Online User	Network Load	Network 7	est		
LOG						
EVENT	User I		IP	User Login Time 2017-12-06 17:01:50	Block	
NETWORK	adn	um T.	92.168.12.133	2017-12-06 17:01:50	20	
HDD						
CHANNEL INFO						
BPS						
	Block	60	Sec.			

Figure 5-256

To block an online user, click and then enter the time that you want to block this user. The maximum value you can set is 65535.

The system detects every 5 seconds to check if there is any user added or deleted, and update the user list timely.

### 5.21.4.2 Viewing the Network Load

Network load means the data flow which measures the transmission capability. You can view the information such as data receiving speed and sending speed.

Step 1 Select Main Menu > INFO > NETWORK > Network Load.

The Network Load interface is displayed. See Figure 5-257.

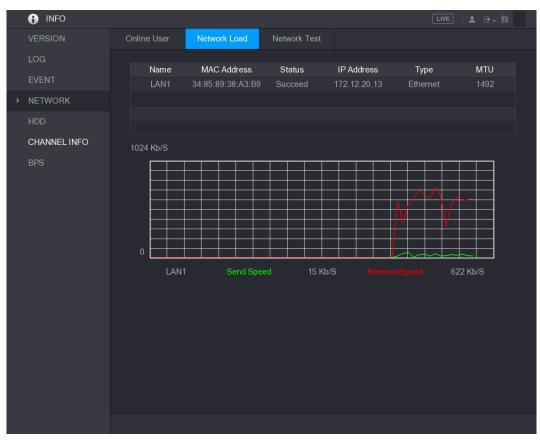


Figure 5-257

Step 2 Click the LAN name that you want to view, for example, LAN1.

The system displays the information of data sending speed and receiving speed.

- The default display is LAN1 load.
- Only one LAN load can be displayed at one time.

### 5.21.5 Viewing HDD Information

You can view the HDD quantity, HDD type, total space, free space, status, and S.M.A.R.T information.

Select Main Menu > INFO > HDD, the HDD interface is displayed. See Figure 5-258.

INFO						VE 💄 🕞 🗸 📴
VERSION	1*	Device Name	Physical Position	Туре	Total Space	Free Space
LOG	All			туре	2.72 TB	0.00 MB
EVENT	1*	sda	main board-1	Read/Write	2.72 TB	0.00 MB
NETWORK						
HDD						
CHANNEL INFO						
BPS						

Figure 5-258

Parameter	Description
No.	Indicates the number of the currently connected HDD. The asterisk (*)
NO.	means the current working HDD.
Device Name	Indicates name of HDD.
Physical Position	Indicates installation position of HDD.
Туре	Indicates HDD type.
Total Space	Indicates the total capacity of HDD.
Free Space	Indicates the usable capacity of HDD.
Status	Indicates the status of the HDD to show if it is working normally.
S.M.A.R.T	View the S.M.A.R.T reports from HDD detecting.

Table 5-76

### 5.21.6 Viewing Channel Information

You can view the camera information connected to each channel.

Select **Main Menu > INFO > CHANNEL INFO**, the **CHANNEL INFO** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-259.

	VERSION		
	LOG	Channel	Format
	EVENT		1080P 🔵
	NETWORK		
	HDD		
>	CHANNEL INFO	7	
	BPS		

Figure 5-259

## 5.21.7 Viewing Data Stream Information

You can view the real-time data stream rate and resolution of each channel. Select **Main Menu > INFO > BPS**, the **BPS** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-260.

	FO		LIVE	
VERSIG	NC	Channel Kb/S Resolution Wave		
EVENT NETWO HDD		1       109       2560*1440		

Figure 5-260

### 5.21.8 Viewing PoC Information

#### 

Not all models support this function.

You can view the information about PoC camera, such as quantity, mode, and power consumption.

Select **Main Menu > INFO > PoC INFO**, the **PoC INFO** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-261.

🔒 INFO	÷		LIVE 💄 🕞 🗸
VERSION			
LOG	Channel	Mode	Note
	1	AF	
EVENT	2	AT	AF : The max. power of PoC camera is 6W.
NETWORK	3	AF	AT : The max. power of PoC camera is 12W.
	4	AT	: Non-PoC camera or no camera is connected.
HDD	5		
	6		
DEVICE STATUS	7		
CHANNEL INFO	8	-	
	9	AF	
BPS	10 11	AT AF	Tips
D-C INFO	12	AF	
PoC INFO	13	_	4 AF PoC camera(s) and 4 AT PoC camera(s) are connected
	14		2 AT PoC camera(s) or 5 AF PoC camera(s) can be added
	15		
	16		

Figure 5-261

Parameter	Description
AF	The maximum power of PoC camera is 6 W.
AT	The maximum power of PoC camera is 12 W.
	Non PoC camera or no camera is connected.

Table 5-77

## 5.22 Logout the Device

On the top right of the Main Menu interface or on any interface after you have entered the Main

Menu, click

- Select **Logout**, you will log out the device.
- Select **Reboot**, the Device will be rebooted.
- Select **Shutdown**, the Device will be turned off.

# 6

## Web Operations

#### 📖 NOTE

- The interfaces in the Manual are used for introducing the operations and only for reference. The actual interface might be different dependent on the model you purchased. If there is inconsistency between the Manual and the actual product, the actual product shall govern.
- The Manual is a general document for introducing the product, so there might be some functions described for the Device in the Manual not apply to the model you purchased.
- Besides Web, you can use our Smart PSS to login the device. For detailed information, please refer to Smart PSS user's manual.

## 6.1 Connecting to Network

#### 

- The factory default IP of the Device is 192.168.1.108.
- The Device supports monitoring on different browsers such as Safari, fire fox, Google on Apple PC to perform the functions such as multi-channel monitoring, PTZ control, and device parameters configurations.
- <u>Step 1</u> Check to make sure the Device has connected to the network.
- <u>Step 2</u> Configure the IP address, subnet mask and gateway for the PC and the Device. For details about network configuration of the Device, see "5.1.4.4 Configuring Network Settings."
- <u>Step 3</u> On your PC, check the network connection of the Device by using "ping \*\*\*.\*\*\*.\*\*\*". Usually the return value of TTL is 255.

## 6.2 Logging in the Web

<u>Step 1</u> Open the IE browser, enter the IP address of the Device, and then press Enter. The Login in dialog box is displayed. See Figure 6-1.

<b>Calhua</b> Login in
👤 admin
<b>€</b> ©
TCP
Forgot Password?
Login

Figure 6-1

<u>Step 2</u> Enter the user name and password.

NOTE

- The default administrator account is **admin**. The password is the one that was configured during initial settings. To security your account, it is recommended to keep the password properly and change it regularly.
- Click local to display the password.
- If you forgot the password, click **Forgot Password?** to reset the password. For details about resetting the password, see "6.3 Resetting Password."

Step 3 Click Login.

## 6.3 Resetting Password

You can reset the password by the following methods when you forgot the password for admin account.

- If the password reset function is enabled, you can use mobile phone to scan the QR code on the local interface or web interface to reset the password.
- If the password reset function is disabled, please enable this function on the local interface first. For details, see "5.20.2.2 Configuring System Service Settings."

<u>Step 1</u> Login the Web of the Device.

The Login in dialog box is displayed. See Figure 6-2.

<b>alhua</b> TECHNOLOGY	Login in
👤 admin	
Ð	
ТСР	
	Forgot Password?
Login	

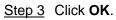
Figure 6-2

#### Step 2 Click Forgot Password?

The Reset Password interface is displayed. See Figure 6-4.

Reset Password			
		2.Reset Type	3.Reset Password
	your e-mail address, device i used only for the purposes o	password reset environment, we nee MAC address, device SN, etc. All coll f verifying device validity and sending nd want to continue the operation?	ected info is
			OK Cancel

Figure 6-3



The reset type interface is displayed. See Figure 6-4.

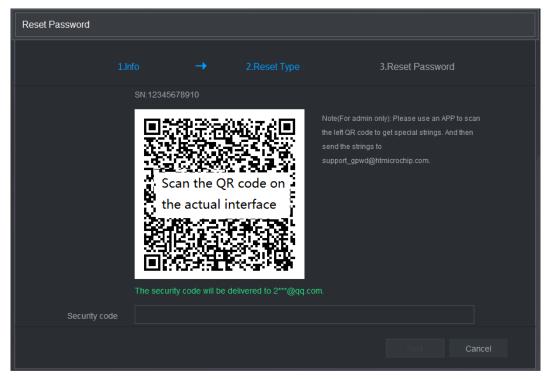


Figure 6-4

<u>Step 4</u> Follow the onscreen instructions to scan the QR code and get the security code.



- You can get the security code twice by scanning the same QR code. If you need to
  get the security code once again, please refresh the interface.
- Please use the security code received in your email box to reset the password within 24 hours; otherwise the security code becomes invalid.
- Wrong security code entrance up to five times will cause the security code locked for five minutes. After five minutes, you can continue to use this security code.
- <u>Step 5</u> In the **Security code** box, enter the security code received in your reserved email box.
- Step 6 Click Next.

The new password resetting interface is displayed. See Figure 6-5

Reset Password					
		<b>→</b>	2.Reset the passwor		
	User Name	admin			
	Password	••••••			
	Confirm Password	•••••			
				Cancel	Save

Figure 6-5

Step 7 In the **Password** box, enter the new password and enter it again in the **Confirm Password** box.

NOTE

The new password can be set from 8 characters through 32 characters and contains at least two types from number, letter and special characters (excluding"", """, ";", ":" and "&").

<u>Step 8</u> Click **Save**. The password resetting is started.

After resetting is completed, a pop-up message is displayed to indicate the result and you will see the login interface is displayed. Then you can use the new password to login the web.

## 6.4 Introducing Web Main Menu

After you have logged in the Web, the main menu is displayed. See Figure 6-6. For detailed operations, you can refer to "5 Local Configurations."



Figure 6-6

No.	lcon	Description
1		Includes configuration menu through which you can configure camera settings, network settings, storage settings, system settings, account settings, and view information.
2	None	Displays system date and time.
3	•	When you point to . the current user account is displayed.
4	•	Click , select <b>Logout</b> , <b>Reboot</b> , or <b>Shutdown</b> according to your actual situation.
5	9.0 9.0	<ul> <li>Displays Cell Phone Client and Device SN QR Code.</li> <li>Cell Phone Client: Use your mobile phone to scan the QR code to add the device into the Cell Phone Client, and then you can start accessing the Device from your cell phone.</li> <li>Device SN: Obtain the Device SN by scanning the QR code. Go to the P2P management platform and add the Device SN into the platform. Then you can access and manage the device in the WAN. For details, please refer to the P2P operation manual. You can also configure P2P function in the local configurations. See "5.1.4.5 Configuring P2P Settings."</li> </ul>
6		Displays the web main menu.

No.	lcon	Description
7	None	<ul> <li>Includes eight function tiles: LIVE, VIDEO, ALARM, IVS, IoT, BACKUP, DISPLAY, and AUDIO. Click each tile to open the configuration interface of the tile.</li> <li>LIVE: You can perform the operations such as viewing real-time video, configuring channel layout, setting PTZ controls, and using smart talk and instant record functions if needed.</li> <li>VIDEO: Search for and play back the recorded video saved on the Device.</li> <li>ALARM: Search for alarm information and configure alarm event actions.</li> <li>IVS: Configure the behavior detections by drawing rules for detecting tripwire, intrusion, abandoned objects, and missing objects.</li> <li>IoT: You can view, search and export the temperature and humidity data of camera and configure the alarm event settings.</li> <li>BACKUP: Search and back up the video files to the local PC or external storage device such as USB storage device.</li> <li>DISPLAY: Configure the display effect such as displaying content, image transparency, and resolution, and enable the zero-channel function.</li> <li>AUDIO: Manage audio files and configure the playing schedule. The audio file can be played in response to an alarm event if the voice prompts function is enabled.</li> </ul>

Table 6-1

# **7** FAQ

#### 1. DVR cannot boot up properly.

- There are following possibilities:
- Input power is not correct.
- Power connection is not correct.
- Power switch button is damaged.
- Program upgrade is wrong.
- HDD malfunction or something wrong with HDD jumper configuration.
- Seagate DB35.1, DB35.2, SV35 or Maxtor 17-g has compatibility problem. Please upgrade to the latest version to solve this problem.
- Front panel error.
- Main board is damaged.

#### 2. DVR frequently shuts down or stops running.

There are following possibilities:

- Input voltage is not stable or it is too low.
- HDD malfunction or something wrong with jumper configuration.
- Button power is not enough.
- Front video signal is not stable.
- Working environment is too harsh, too much dust.
- Hardware malfunction.

#### 3. Hard disk cannot be detected.

There are following possibilities:

- HDD is broken.
- HDD jumper is damaged.
- HDD cable connection is loose.
- Main board SATA port is broken.

#### 4. There is no video output whether it is one-channel, multiple-channel or all-channel output.

There are following possibilities:

- Program is not compatible. Please upgrade to the latest version.
- Brightness is 0. Please restore factory default setup.
- There is no video input signal or it is too weak.
- Check privacy mask setup or your screen saver.
- DVR hardware malfunctions.

#### 5. Real-time video color is distorted.

There are following possibilities:

- When using BNC output, NTSC and PAL setup is not correct. The real-time video becomes black and white.
- DVR and monitor resistance is not compatible.
- Video transmission is too long or degrading is too huge.
- DVR color or brightness setup is not correct.

#### 6. Cannot search local records.

There are following possibilities:

- HDD jumper is damaged.
- HDD is broken.
- Upgraded program is not compatible.
- The recorded file has been overwritten.
- Record function has been disabled.

#### 7. Video is distorted when searching local records.

There are following possibilities:

- Video quality setup is too low.
- Program read error, bit data is too small. There is mosaic in the full screen. Please restart the DVR to solve this problem.
- HDD data jumper error.
- HDD malfunction.
- DVR hardware malfunctions.

#### 8. No audio under monitor state.

There are following possibilities:

- It is not a power picker.
- It is not a power acoustics.
- Audio cable is damaged.
- DVR hardware malfunctions.

#### 9. There is audio under monitor state but no audio under playback state.

There are following possibilities:

- Setup is not correct. Please enable audio function.
- Corresponding channel has no video input. Playback is not continuous when the screen is blue.

#### 10. System time is not correct.

There are following possibilities:

- Setup is not correct.
- Battery contact is not correct or voltage is too low.
- Crystal oscillator is broken.

#### 11. Cannot control PTZ on DVR.

There are following possibilities:

- Front panel PTZ error.
- PTZ decoder setup, connection or installation is not correct.
- Cable connection is not correct.
- PTZ setup is not correct.
- PTZ decoder and DVR protocol is not compatible.
- PTZ decoder and DVR address is not compatible.
- When there are several decoders, please add 120 Ohm between the PTZ decoder A/B cables furthest end to delete the reverberation or impedance matching. Otherwise the PTZ control is not stable.
- The distance is too far.

#### 12. Motion detection function does not work.

There are following possibilities:

- Period setup is not correct.
- Motion detection zone setup is not correct.

- Sensitivity is too low.
- For some versions, there is hardware limit.

#### 13. Cannot log in client-end or web.

There are following possibilities:

- For Windows 98 or Windows ME user, please update your system to Windows 2000 sp4. Or you can install client-end software of lower version. Please note right now, our DVR is not compatible with Windows VISTA control.
- ActiveX control has been disabled.
- No dx8.1 or higher. Please upgrade display card driver.
- Network connection error.
- Network setup error.
- Password or user name is invalid.
- Client-end is not compatible with DVR program.

#### 14. There is only mosaic no video when preview or playback video file remotely.

There are following possibilities:

- Network fluency is not good.
- Client-end resources are limit.
- There is multiple-cast group setup in DVR. This mode can result in mosaic. Usually we do not recommend this mode.
- There is privacy mask or channel protection setup.
- Current user has no right to monitor.
- DVR local video output quality is not good.

#### **15. Network connection is not stable.**

There are following possibilities:

- Network is not stable.
- IP address conflict.
- MAC address conflict.
- PC or DVR network card is not good.

#### 16. Burn error /USB back error.

There are following possibilities:

- Burner and DVR are in the same data cable.
- System uses too much CPU resources. Please stop record first and then begin backup.
- Data amount exceeds backup device capacity. It may result in burner error.
- Backup device is not compatible.
- Backup device is damaged.

#### 17. Keyboard cannot control DVR

There are following possibilities:

- DVR serial port setup is not correct.
- Address is not correct.
- When there are several switchers, power supply is not enough.
- Transmission distance is too far.

#### 18. Alarm signal cannot be disarmed.

There are following possibilities:

- Alarm setup is not correct.
- Alarm output has been open manually.
- Input device error or connection is not correct.

• Some program versions may have this problem. Please upgrade your system.

#### 19. Alarm function is null.

There are following possibilities:

- Alarm setup is not correct.
- Alarm cable connection is not correct.
- Alarm input signal is not correct.
- There are two loops connect to one alarm device.

#### 20. Remote control does not work.

There are following possibilities:

- Remote control address is not correct.
- Distance is too far or control angle is too small.
- Remote control battery power is low.
- Remote control is damaged or DVR front panel is damaged.

#### 21. Record storage period is not enough.

There are following possibilities:

- Camera quality is too low. Lens is dirty. Camera is installed against the light. Camera aperture setup is not correct.
- HDD capacity is not enough.
- HDD is damaged.

#### 22. Cannot playback the downloaded file.

There are following possibilities:

- There is no media player.
- No DXB8.1 or higher graphic acceleration software.
- There is no DivX503Bundle.exe control when you play the file transformed to AVI via media player.
- No DivX503Bundle.exe or ffdshow-2004 1012 .exe in Windows XP OS.

#### 23. Forgot local menu operation password or network password

Please contact your local service engineer or our sales person for help. We can guide you to solve this problem.

#### 24. When I login via HTTPS, a dialogue says the certificate for this website is for other address.

Please create server certificate again.

#### 25. When I login via HTTPS, a dialogue says the certificate is not trusted.

Please download root certificate again.

#### 26. When I login via HTTPS, a dialogue says the certificate has expired or is not valid yet.

Please make sure your PC time is the same as the device time.

#### 27. I connect the general analog camera to the device, there is no video output.

There are following possibilities:

- Check camera power supplying, data cable connection and other items.
- This series device does not support the analog camera of all brands. Please make sure the device supports general standard definition analog camera.

## 28. I connect the standard definition analog camera or the coaxial camera to the device, there is no video output.

There are following possibilities:

• Check camera power supplying, or camera data cable connection.

 For the product supports analog standard definition camera/HD camera, you need to go to the Main Menu > CAMERA > CHANNEL TYPE to select corresponding channel type and then restart the DVR.

#### 29. I cannot connect to the IP channel.

There are following possibilities:

- Check the camera is online or not.
- Check IP channel setup is right or not (such as IP address, user name, password, connection protocol, and port number).
- The camera has set the whitelist (Only the specified devices can connect to the camera).

#### 30. After I connected to the IP channel, the one-window output is OK, but there is no

#### multiple-window output.

There are following possibilities:

- Check the sub stream of the camera has been enabled or not.
- Check the sub stream type of the camera is H.264 or not.
- Check the device supports camera sub stream resolution or not (such as 960H, D1, and HD1).

## 31. After I connected to the IP channel, the multiple-window output is OK, but there is no one-window output.

There are following possibilities:

- Check there is video from the IP channel or not. Please go to the Main Menu > INFO > BPS to view bit stream real-time information.
- Check the main stream of the camera has been enabled or not.
- Check the main stream type of the camera is H.264 or not.
- Check the device supports camera main stream resolution or not (such as 960H, D1, and HD1).
- Check camera network transmission has reached the threshold or not. Please check the online user of the camera.

## 32. After I connected to the IP channel, there is no video output in the one-window or the multiple-window mode. But I can see there is bit stream.

There are following possibilities:

- Check the main stream/sub stream type of the camera is H.264 or not.
- Check the device supports camera main stream/sub stream resolution or not (such as 1080P, 720P, 960H, D1, and HD1).
- Check the camera setup. Please make sure It supports the products of other manufacturers.

#### 33. DDNS registration failed or cannot access the device domain name.

There are following possibilities:

- Check the device is connected to the WAN. Please check the device has got the IP address if the PPPoE can dial. If there is a router, please check the router to make sure the device IP is online.
- Check the corresponding protocol of the DDNS is enabled. Check the DDNS function is OK or not.
- Check DNS setup is right or not. Default Google DNS server is 8.8.8.8, 8.8.5.5. You can use different DNS provided by your ISP.

#### 34. I cannot use the P2P function on my cell phone or the WEB.

There are following possibilities:

- Check the device P2P function is enabled or not. (Main menu->Setting->Network->P2P)
- Check the device is in the WAN or not.
- Check cell phone P2P login mode is right or not.
- It is the specified device P2P login port or not when you are using P2P client.
- Check user name or password is right or not.
- Check P2P SN is right or not. You can use the cell phone to scan the QR code on the device P2P interface (Main Menu > Network > P2P), or you can use the version information of the WEB to confirm. (For some previous series products, the device SN is the main board SN, it may result in error.)

#### 35. I connect the standard definition camera to the device, there is no video output.

There are following possibilities:

- Check the DVR supports standard definition signal or not. Only some series product supports analog standard definition signal, coaxial signal input.
- Check channel type is right or not. For the product supports analog standard definition camera/HD camera, you need to go to the **Main Menu > CAMERA > CHANNEL TYPE** to select corresponding channel type (such as analog) and then restart the DVR. In this way, the DVR can recognize the analog standard definition.
- Check camera power supplying, or camera data cable connection.

#### 36. I cannot connect to the IP camera.

There are following possibilities:

- Check DVR supports IP channel or not. Only some series products support A/D switch function, it can switch analog channel to the IP channel to connect to the IP camera. From Main Menu > CAMERA > CHANNEL TYPE, select the last channel to switch to the IP channel. Some series product products support IP channel extension, it supports N+N mode.
- Check the IPC and the DVR is connected or not. Please go to the Main Menu > CAMERA > REGISTRATION to search to view the IP camera is online or not. Or you can go to the Main Menu > INFO > NETWORK > Network Test, you can input IP camera IP address and then click the Test button to check you can connect to the IP camera or not.
- Check IP channel setup is right or not (such as IP address, manufacturer, port, user name, password, and remote channel number).

#### Daily Maintenance

- Please use the brush to clean the board, socket connector and the chassis regularly.
- The device shall be soundly earthed in case there is audio/video disturbance. Keep the device away from the static voltage or induced voltage.
- Please unplug the power cable before you remove the audio/video signal cable, RS232 or RS485 cable.
- Do not connect the TV to the local video output port (VOUT). It may result in video output circuit.
- Always shut down the device properly. Please use the shutdown function in the menu, or you can press the power button in the front panel for at least three seconds to shut down the device. Otherwise it may result in HDD malfunction.
- Please make sure the device is away from the direct sunlight or other heating sources. Please keep the sound ventilation.
- Please check and maintain the device regularly.

The abbreviations in this glossary are related to the Manual.

Abbreviations	Full term
BNC	Bayonet Nut Connector
CBR	Constant Bit Rate
CIF	Common Intermediate Format
DDNS	Dynamic Domain Name Service
DHCP	Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol
DNS	Domain Name System
DST	Daylight Saving Time
DVR	Digital Video Recorder
FTP	File Transfer Protocol
HDD	Hard Disk Drive
HDMI	High Definition Multimedia Interface
HTTP	Hyper Text Transfer Protocol
loT	Internet of Things
IP	Internet Protocol
IVS	Intelligent Video System
LAN	Local Area Network
MAC	Media Access Control
MTU	Maximum Transmission Unit
NTP	Network Time Protocol
NTSC	National Television Standards Committee
ONVIF	Open Network Video Interface Forum
PAL	Phase Alteration Line
PAT	Port Address Translation
POS	Point of Sale
PPPoE	Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet
PSS	Professional Surveillance Software
PTZ	Pan Tilt Zoom
RCA	Radio Corporation of American
RTSP	Real Time Streaming Protocol
S.M.A.R.T	Self-Monitoring-Analysis and Reporting Technology
SATA	Serial Advanced Technology Attachment
SMTP	Simple Mail Transfer Protocol
SNMP	Simple Network Management Protocol
ТСР	Transmission Control Protocol
TFTP	Trivial File Transfer Protocol
UDP	User Datagram Protocol
UPnP	Universal Plug and Play
VBR	Variable Bit Rate

Abbreviations	Full term
VGA	Video Graphics Array
WAN	Wide Area Network

Calculate total capacity needed by each DVR according to video recording (video recording type and video file storage time).

<u>Step 1</u> According to Formula (1) to calculate storage capacity  $q_i$  that is the capacity of each channel needed for each hour, unit MB.

Formula (1): 
$$q_i = d_i \div 8 \times 3600 \div 1024$$

In the formula:  $d_i$  means the bit rate, unit Kbit/s

<u>Step 2</u> After video time requirement is confirmed, according to Formula (2) to calculate the storage capacity  $m_i$ , which is storage of each channel needed unit MB.

Formula (2): 
$$m_i = q_i \times h_i \times D_i$$

In the formula:

- $h_i$  means the recording time for each day (hour)
- $D_i$  means number of days for which the video shall be kept
- <u>Step 3</u> According to Formula (3) to calculate total capacity (accumulation)  $q_T$  that is needed for all channels in the DVR during **scheduled video recording**.

Formula (3): 
$$q_T = \sum_{i=1}^{c} m_i$$

In the formula: c means total number of channels in one DVR

<u>Step 4</u> According to Formula (4) to calculate total capacity (accumulation)  $q_T$  that is needed for all channels in DVR during **alarm video recording (including motion detection)**.

Formula (4): 
$$q_T = \sum_{i=1}^c m_i \star a\%$$

In the formula: a% means alarm occurrence rate

You can refer to the following table for the file size in one hour per channel. (All the data listed below are for reference only.)

Bit stream size (max)	File size	Bit stream size (max)	File size
96Kbps	42MB	128Kbps	56MB
160Kbps	70MB	192Kbps	84MB
224Kbps	98MB	256Kbps	112MB
320Kbps	140MB	384Kbps	168MB
448Kbps	196MB	512Kbps	225MB

Bit stream size (max)	File size	Bit stream size (max)	File size
640Kbps	281MB	768Kbps	337MB
896Kbps	393MB	1024Kbps	450MB
1280Kbps	562MB	1536Kbps	675MB
1792Kbps	787MB	2048Kbps	900MB

## Appendix 3.1 Compatible USB list

Manufacturer	Model	Capacity	
Sandisk	Cruzer Micro	512MB	
Sandisk	Cruzer Micro	1GB	
Sandisk	Cruzer Micro	2GB	
Sandisk	Cruzer Freedom	256MB	
Sandisk	Cruzer Freedom	512MB	
Sandisk	Cruzer Freedom	1GB	
Sandisk	Cruzer Freedom	2GB	
Kingston	DataTraveler II	1GB	
Kingston	DataTraveler II	2GB	
Kingston	DataTraveler	1GB	
Kingston	DataTraveler	2GB	
Maxell	USB Flash Stick	128MB	
Maxell	USB Flash Stick	256MB	
Maxell	USB Flash Stick	512MB	
Maxell	USB Flash Stick	1GB	
Maxell	USB Flash Stick	2GB	
Kingax	Super Stick	128MB	
Kingax	Super Stick	256MB	
Kingax	Super Stick	512MB	
Kingax	Super Stick	1GB	
Kingax	Super Stick	2GB	
Netac	U210	128MB	
Netac	U210	256MB	
Netac	U210	512MB	
Netac	U210	1GB	
Netac	U210	2GB	
Netac	U208	4GB	
Teclast	Ti Cool	128MB	
Teclast	Ti Cool	256MB	
Teclast	Ti Cool	512MB	
Teclast	Ti Cool	1GB	
Sandisk	Cruzer Micro	2GB	
Sandisk	Cruzer Micro	8GB	
Sandisk	Ti Cool	2GB	
Sandisk	Hongjiao	4GB	
Lexar	Lexar	256MB	

Manufacturer	Model	Capacity
Kingston	Data Traveler	1GB
Kingston	Data Traveler	16GB
Kingston	Data Traveler	32GB
Aigo	L8315	16GB
Sandisk	250	16GB
Kingston	Data Traveler Locker+	32GB
Netac	U228	8GB

## Appendix 3.2 Compatible SD Card list

Manufacturer	Standard	Capacity	Card type
Transcend	SDHC6	16GB	Big
Kingston	SDHC4	4GB	Big
Kingston	SD	2GB	Big
Kingston	SD	1GB	Big
Sandisk	SDHC2	8GB	Small
Sandisk	SD	1GB	Small

## Appendix 3.3 Compatible Portable HDD list

Manufacturer	Model	Capacity
YDStar	YDstar HDD box	40GB
Netac	Netac	80GB
lomega	Iomega RPHD-CG" RNAJ50U287	250GB
WD Elements	WCAVY1205901	1.5TB
Newsmy	Liangjian	320GB
WD Elements	WDBAAR5000ABK-00	500GB
WD Elements	WDBAAU0015HBK-00	1.5TB
Seagate	FreeAgent Go(ST905003F)	500GB
Aigo	H8169	500GB

## Appendix 3.4 Compatible USB DVD List

Manufacturer	Model
Samsung	SE-S084
BenQ	LD2000-2K4

## Appendix 3.5 Compatible SATA DVD List

Manufacturer	Model
LG	GH22NS30

Manufacturer	Model
Samsung	TS-H653 Ver.A
Samsung	TS-H653 Ver.F
Samsung	SH-224BB/CHXH
SONY	DRU-V200S
SONY	DRU-845S
SONY	AW-G170S
Pioneer	DVR-217CH

## Appendix 3.6 Compatible SATA HDD List

#### 

Please upgrade the DVR firmware to latest version to ensure the accuracy of the table below. Here we recommend HDD of 500GB to 4TB capacity.

Manufacturer	Series	Model	Capacity	Port Mode
Seagate	Video 3.5	ST1000VM002	1TB	SATA
Seagate	Video 3.5	ST2000VM003	2TB	SATA
Seagate	Video 3.5	ST3000VM002	3TB	SATA
Seagate	Video 3.5	ST4000VM000	4TB	SATA
Seagate	SV35	ST1000VX000	1TB	SATA
Seagate	SV35	ST2000VX000	2TB	SATA
Seagate	SV35	ST3000VX000	3TB	SATA
Seagate	SV35 (Support HDD	ST1000VX002	1TB	SATA
	data recovery offered by			
	Seagate)			
Seagate	SV35 (Support HDD	ST2000VX004	2TB	SATA
	data recovery offered by			
	Seagate)			
Seagate	SV35 (Support HDD	ST3000VX004	3TB	SATA
	data recovery offered by			
	Seagate)			
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST1000VX001	1TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST1000VX005	1TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST2000VX003	2TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST2000VX008	2TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST3000VX006	3TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST3000VX010	3TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST4000VX000	4TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST4000VX007	4TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST5000VX0001	5TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST6000VX0001	6TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST6000VX0023	6TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST6000VX0003	6TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST8000VX0002	8TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST8000VX0022	8TB	SATA

Manufacturer	Series	Model	Capacity	Port Mode
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST100000VX0004	10TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST1000VX003	1TB	SATA
	(Support HDD data			
	recovery offered by			
	Seagate)			
Seagate	(Support HDD data	ST2000VX005	2TB	SATA
	recovery offered by			
	Seagate)			
Seagate	(Support HDD data	ST3000VX005	3TB	SATA
	recovery offered by			
	Seagate)			
Seagate	(Support HDD data	ST4000VX002	4TB	SATA
	recovery offered by			
	Seagate)			
Seagate	(Support HDD data	ST5000VX0011	5TB	SATA
	recovery offered by			
	Seagate)			
Seagate	(Support HDD data	ST6000VX0011	6TB	SATA
	recovery offered by			
	Seagate)			
Seagate	(Support HDD data	ST8000VX0012	8TB	SATA
	recovery offered by			
	Seagate)			
WD	WD Green	WD10EURX (EOL)	1TB	SATA
WD	WD Green	WD20EURX (EOL)	2TB	SATA
WD	WD Green	WD30EURX (EOL)	3TB	SATA
WD	WD Green	WD40EURX (EOL)	4TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD10PURX	1TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD20PURX	2TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD30PURX	3TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD40PURX	4TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD50PURX	5TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD60PURX	6TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD80PUZX	8TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD10PURZ	1TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD20PURZ	2TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD30PURZ	3TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD40PURZ	4TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD50PURZ	5TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD60PURZ	6TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD80PURZ	8TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD4NPURX	4TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD6NPURX	6TB	SATA
TOSHIBA	Mars	DT01ABA100V	1TB	SATA
TOSHIBA	Mars	DT01ABA200V	2TB	SATA

Manufacturer	Series	Model	Capacity	Port Mode
TOSHIBA	Mars	DT01ABA300V	3TB	SATA
TOSHIBA	Sonance	MD03ACA200V	2TB	SATA
TOSHIBA	Sonance	MD03ACA300V	3TB	SATA
TOSHIBA	Sonance	MD03ACA400V	4TB	SATA
TOSHIBA	Sonance	MD04ABA400V	4TB	SATA
TOSHIBA	Sonance	MD04ABA500V	5TB	SATA
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST1000NM0033	1TB	SATA
-	(SATA interface)			
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST2000NM0033	2TB	SATA
	(SATA interface)			
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST3000NM0033	3TB	SATA
	(SATA interface)			
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST4000NM0033	4TB	SATA
	(SATA interface)			
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST1000NM0055	1TB	SATA
	(SATA interface)			
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST2000NM0055	2TB	SATA
	(SATA interface)			
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST3000NM0005	3TB	SATA
	(SATA interface)			
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST4000NM0035	4TB	SATA
	(SATA interface)			
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST6000NM0115	6TB	SATA
	(SATA interface)			
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST8000NM0055	8TB	SATA
	(SATA interface)			
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST10000NM0016	10TB	SATA
	(SATA interface)			
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST4000NM0024	4TB	SATA
	(SATA interface)			0.171
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST6000NM0024	6TB	SATA
0	(SATA interface)		470	0.070
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST1000NM0023	1TB	SATA
Sagata	(SAS interface) Constellation ES series	ST2000NM0023	2TB	SATA
Seagate	(SAS interface)	512000INIVI0023		SATA
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST3000NM0023	3TB	SATA
Seagale	(SAS interface)	3130001110023	510	SAIA
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST4000NM0023	4TB	SATA
Jugale	(SAS interface)			
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST6000NM0014	6TB	SATA
Cougaio	(SAS interface)			
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST1000NM0045	1TB	SATA
Cougaio	(SAS interface)			
		I		

Manufacturer	Series	Model	Capacity	Port Mode
Seagate	Constellation ES series (SAS interface)	ST2000NM0045	2TB	SATA
Seagate	Constellation ES series (SAS interface)	ST3000NM0025	3TB	SATA
Seagate	Constellation ES series (SAS interface)	ST4000NM0025	4TB	SATA
Seagate	Constellation ES series (SAS interface)	ST6000NM0095	6TB	SATA
Seagate	Constellation ES series (SAS interface)	ST6000NM0034	6TB	SATA
Seagate	Constellation ES series (SAS interface)	ST8000NM0075	8TB	SATA
WD	WD RE series (SATA interface)	WD1003FBYZ	1TB	SATA
WD	WD RE series (SATA interface)	WD1004FBYZ (replace WD1003FBYZ)	1TB	SATA
WD	WD RE series (SATA interface)	WD2000FYYZ	2TB	SATA
WD	WD RE series (SATA interface)	WD2004FBYZ (replace WD2000FYYZ)	2TB	SATA
WD	WD RE series (SATA interface)	WD3000FYYZ	3TB	SATA
WD	WD RE series (SATA interface)	WD4000FYYZ	4TB	SATA
WD	WD (SATA interface)	WD2000F9YZ	2TB	SATA
WD	WD (SATA interface)	WD3000F9YZ	3TB	SATA
WD	WD (SATA interface)	WD4000F9YZ	4TB	SATA
WD	WD (SATA interface)	WD4002FYYZ	4TB	SATA
WD	WD (SATA interface)	WD6001FSYZ	6TB	SATA
WD	WD (SATA interface)	WD6002FRYZ	6TB	SATA
WD	WD (SATA interface)	WD8002FRYZ	8TB	SATA
HITACHI	Ultrastar series (SATA interface)	HUS724030ALA640	3TB	SATA
HITACHI	Ultrastar series (SATA interface)	HUS726060ALE610	6TB	SATA
HITACHI	Ultrastar series (SATA interface)	HUH728060ALE600	6TB	SATA
HITACHI	Ultrastar series (SATA interface)	HUH728080ALE600	8TB	SATA
HITACHI	Ultrastar series (SAS interface)	HUS726020AL5210	2TB	SATA
HITACHI	Ultrastar series (SAS interface)	HUS726040AL5210	4TB	SATA

Manufacturer	Series	Model	Capacity	Port Mode
HITACHI	Ultrastar series (SAS	HUS726060AL5210	6TB	SATA
	interface)			
Seagate	Pipeline HD Mini	ST320VT000	320GB	SATA
Seagate	Pipeline HD Mini	ST500VT000	500GB	SATA
Seagate	Pipeline HD Mini	ST2000LM003 (EOL)	2TB	SATA
TOSHIBA	2.5-inch PC series	MQ01ABD050V	500GB	SATA
TOSHIBA	2.5-inch PC series	MQ01ABD100V	1TB	SATA
SAMSUNG	HN-M101MBB	HN-M101MBB (EOL)	1TB	SATA
Seagate	2.5-inch enterprise	ST1000NX0313	1TB	SATA
	series			
Seagate	2.5-inch enterprise	ST2000NX0253	2TB	SATA
	series			

## Appendix 4 Compatible CD/DVD Burner List

#### NOTE

Please upgrade the DVR firmware to latest version to ensure the accuracy of the table below. And you can use the USB cable with the model recommended to set USB burner.

Manufacturer	Model	Port Type	Туре
Sony	DRX-S50U	USB	DVD-RW
Sony	DRX-S70U	USB	DVD-RW
Sony	AW-G170S	SATA	DVD-RW
Samsung	TS-H653A	SATA	DVD-RW
Panasonic	SW-9588-C	SATA	DVD-RW
Sony	DRX-S50U	USB	DVD-RW
BenQ	5232WI	USB	DVD-RW

## Appendix 5 Compatible Displayer List

Please refer to the following table form compatible displayer I
---

Brand	Model	Dimension (Unit: inch)
BENQ (LCD)	ET-0007-TA	19-inch (wide screen)
DELL (LCD)	E178FPc	17-inch
BENQ (LCD)	Q7T4	17-inch
BENQ (LCD)	Q7T3	17-inch
HFNOVO (LCD)	LXB-L17C	17-inch
SANGSUNG (LCD)	225BW	22-inch (wide screen)
HFNOVO (CRT)	LXB-FD17069HB	17-inch
HFNOVO (CRT)	LXB-HF769A	17-inch
HFNOVO(CRT)	LX-GJ556D	17-inch
Samsung (LCD)	2494HS	24-inch
Samsung (LCD)	P2350	23-inch
Samsung (LCD)	P2250	22-inch
Samsung (LCD)	P2370G	23-inch
Samsung (LCD)	2043	20-inch
Samsung (LCD)	2243EW	22-inch
Samsung (LCD)	SMT-1922P	19-inch
Samsung (LCD)	T190	19-inch
Samsung (LCD)	T240	24-inch
LG (LCD)	W1942SP	19-inch
LG (LCD)	W2243S	22-inch
LG (LCD)	W2343T	23-inch
BENQ (LCD)	G900HD	18.5-inch
BENQ (LCD)	G2220HD	22-inch
PHILIPS (LCD)	230E	23-inch
PHILIPS (LCD)	220CW9	23-inch
PHILIPS (LCD)	220BW9	24-inch
PHILIPS (LCD)	220EW9	25-inch

## Appendix 6 Compatible Switcher

Brand	Model	network working mode	
D-LinK	DES-1016D	10/100M self-adaptive	
D-LinK	DES-1008D	10/100M self-adaptive	
		Five network modes:	
		AUTO	
Ruijie	RG-S1926S	HALF-10M	
Kuljie	KG-319203	• FULL-10M	
		HALF-100M	
		• FULL-100M	
H3C	H3C-S1024	10/100M self-adaptive	
TP-LINK	TL-SF1016	10/100M self-adaptive	
TP-LINK	TL-SF1008+	10/100M self-adaptive	

## Appendix 7.1 What Is the Surge

Surge is a short current or voltage change during a very short time. In the circuit, it lasts for microsecond. In a 220V circuit, the 5KV or 10KV voltage change during a very short time (about microseconds) can be called a surge. The surge comes from two ways: external surge and internal surge.

- The external surge: The external surge mainly comes from the thunder lightning. Or it comes from the voltage change during the on/off operation in the electric power cable.
- The internal surge: The research finds 88% of the surge from the low voltage comes from the internal of the building such as the air conditioning, elevator, electric welding, air compressor, water pump, power button, duplicating machine and other device of inductive load.

The lightning surge is far above the load level the PC or the micro devices can support. In most cases, the surge can result in electric device chip damage, PC error code, accelerating the part aging, data loss and etc. Even when a small 20 horsepower inductive engine boots up or stops, the surge can reach 3000V to 5000V, which can adversely affect the electronic devices that use the same distribution box.

To protect the device, you need to evaluate its environment, the lighting affection degree objectively. Because surge has close relationship with the voltage amplitude, frequency, network structure, device voltage-resistance, protection level, ground and etc. The thunder proof work shall be a systematic project, emphasizing the all-round protection (including building, transmission cable, device, ground and etc.). There shall be comprehensive management and the measures shall be scientific, reliable, practical and economic. Considering the high voltage during the inductive thundering, the International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) standard on the energy absorbing step by step theory and magnitude classification in the protection zone, you need to prepare multiple precaution levels.

You can use the lightning rod, lightning strap or the lightning net to reduce the damage to the building, personal injury or the property.

The lightning protection device can be divided into three types:

- Power lightning arrester: There are 220V single-phrase lightning arrester and 380V three-phrase lightening arrester (mainly in parallel connection, sometimes use series connection) You can parallel connect the power lightning arrester in the electric cable to reduce the short-time voltage change and release the surge current. From the BUS to the device, there are usually three levels so that system can reduce the voltage and release the current step by step to remove the thunderstorm energy and guarantee the device safety. You can select the replaceable module type, the terminal connection type and portable socket according to your requirement.
- Signal lightning arrester: This device is mainly used in the PC network, communication system. The connection type is serial connection. Once you connected the signal lightning

arrestor with the signal port, it can cut the channel of the thunderstorm to the device, and on the other hand, it can discharge the current to the ground to guarantee the device proper work. The signal lightning arrester has many specifications, and widely used in many devices such as telephone, network, analog communication, digital communication, cable TV and satellite antenna. For all the input port, especially those from the outdoor, you need to install the signal lightning arrester.

• Antenna feed cable lightning arrester: It is suitable for antenna system of the transmitter or the device system to receive the wireless signal. It uses the serial connection too.

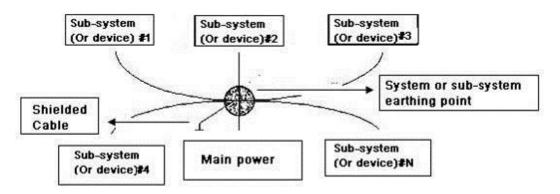
Please note, when you select the lighting arrester, please pay attention to the port type and the earthing reliability. In some important environment, you need to use special shielded cable. Do not parallel connect the thunder proof ground cable with the ground cable of the lightning rod. Please make sure they are far enough and grounded respectively.

## Appendix 7.2 The Earthing Modes

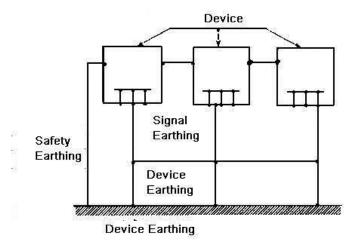
We all know the earthing is the most complicated technology in the electromagnetism compatibility design since there is no systematic theory or module. The earthing has many modes, but the selection depends on the system structure and performance.

The following are some successfully experience from our past work.

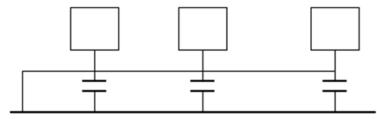
• **One-point ground:** In the following figure you can see there is a one-point ground. This connection provides common point to allow signal to be transmitted in many circuits. If there is no common point, the error signal transmission occurred. In the one-point ground mode, each circuit is just grounded only and they are connected at the same point. Since there is only one common point, there is no circuit and so, there is no interference.



• **Multiple-point ground:** In the following figure, you can see the internal circuit uses the chassis as the common point. While at the same time, all devices chassis use the earthing as the common point. In this connection, the ground structure can provide the lower ground resistance because when there are multiple-point grounds; each ground cable is as short as possible. And the parallel cable connection can reduce the total conductance of the ground conductor. In the high-frequency circuit, you need to use the multiple-point ground mode and each cable needs to connect to the ground. The length shall be less than the 1/20 of the signal wavelength.



 Mixed ground: The mix ground consists of the feature of the one-point ground and multiple-point ground. For example, the power in the system needs to use the one-point ground mode while the radio frequency signal requires the multiple-point ground. So, you can use the following figure to earth. For the direct current (DC), the capacitance is open circuit and the circuit is one-point ground. For the radio frequency signal, the capacitance is conducive and the circuit adopts multiple-point ground.



When connecting devices of huge size (the device physical dimension and connection cable is big comparing with the wave path of existed interference), then there are possibility of interference when the current goes through the chassis and cable. In this situation, the interference circuit path usually lies in the system ground circuit.

When considering the earthing, you need to think about two aspects: One is the system compatibility, and the other is the external interference coupling into the earth circuit, which results in system error. For the external interference is not regular, it is not easy to resolve.

# Appendix 7.3 Thunder Proof Ground Method in the Monitor System

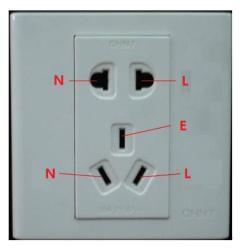
- The monitor system shall have sound thunder proof earthing to guarantee personnel safety and device safety.
- The monitor system working ground resistance shall be less than 1Ω.
- The thunder proof ground shall adopt the special ground cable from the monitor control room to the ground object. The ground cable adopts copper insulation cable or wire and its ground section shall be more than 20mm<sup>2</sup>.
- The ground cable of the monitor system can not short circuit or mixed connected with the strong alternative current cable.
- For all the ground cables from the control room to the monitor system or ground cable of other monitor devices, please use the copper resistance soft cable and its section shall be

more than 4mm<sup>2</sup>.

- The monitor system usually can adopt the one-point ground.
- Please connect the ground end of 3-pin socket in the monitor system to the ground port of the system (protection ground cable)

# Appendix 7.4 The Shortcut Way to Check the Electric System by Digital Multimeter

For 220V AC socket, from the top to the bottom, E (ground cable), N (neutral cable), L(live cable). Please refer to the following figure.



There is a shortcut way to check these thee cables connection are standard or not (not the accurate check).

## 

In the following operations, the multimeter range shall be at 750V.

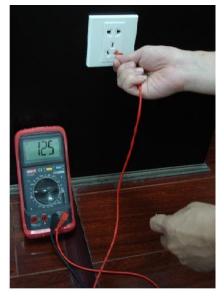
#### For E (earth cable)

Turn the digital multimeter to 750V AC, use your one hand to hold the metal end, and then the other hand insert the pen to the E port of the socket. See the following figure. If the multimeter shows 0, then you can see current earth cable connection is standard. If the value is more than 10, then you can know there is inductive current and the earth cable connection is not proper.



#### For L (live cable)

Turn the digital multimeter to 750V AC, use your one hand to hold the metal end, and then the other hand insert the pen to the L port of the socket. See the following figure. If the multimeter shows 125, then you can see current live cable connection is standard. If the value is less than 60, then you can know current live cable connection is not proper or it is not the live cable at all.

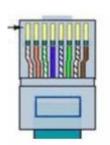


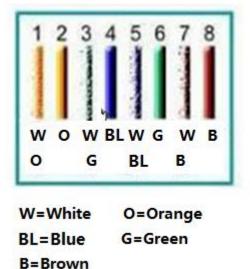
#### For N (Neutral cable)

Turn the digital multimeter to 750V AC, use your one hand to hold the metal end, and then the other hand insert the pen to the N port of the socket. See the following figure. If the multimeter shows 0, then you can see current N cable connection is standard. If the value is more than 10, then you can see there is inductive current and the neutral cable connection is not proper. If the value is 120, then you can know that you have misconnected the neutral cable to the live cable.

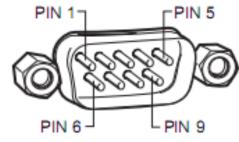


Here we are going to make standard RS232 port and standard RJ45 (T568B). Please refer to the following figure for RJ45 cable definition.



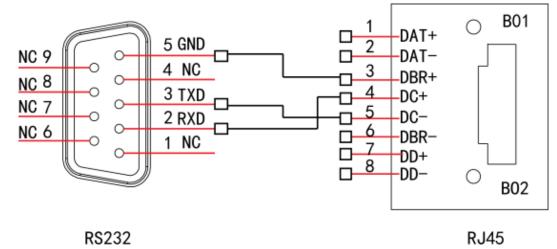


Please refer to the following figure for RS232 pin definition.



#### **Cross Connection**

Please refer to the following figure for connection information.

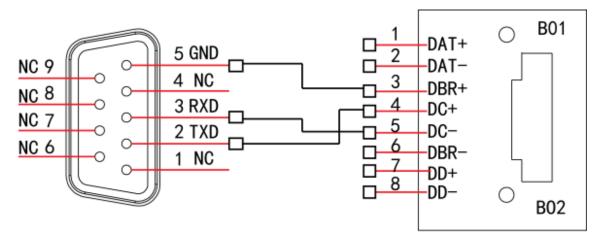


Please refer to the following table for detailed crossover cable connection information.

RJ45 (T568B)	RJ45 (Network cable)	RS232	Signal Description
4	Blue	2	RXD
5	White and blue	3	TXD
3	White and green	5	GND

#### **Straight Connection**

Please refer to the following figure for straight cable connection information.



RS232

RJ45

Please refer to the following table for straight connection information.

RJ45 (T568B)	RJ45 (Network cable)	RS232	Signal Description
4	Blue	3	RXD
5	White and blue	2	TXD
3	White and green	5	GND

